

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

**FORM S-3**  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

**Motus GI Holdings, Inc.**  
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

81-4042793  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)

1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor  
Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301  
Telephone: (954) 541-8000  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

Timothy P. Moran  
Chief Executive Officer  
Motus GI Holdings, Inc.  
1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor  
Ft. Lauderdale, FL 33301  
Telephone: (954) 541-8000  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

*Copies of all communications, including communications sent to the agent for service, to:*

Steven M. Skolnick, Esq.  
Michael J. Lerner, Esq.  
Lowenstein Sandler LLP  
1251 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10020  
Telephone: (212) 262-6700

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:** From time to time after this Registration Statement becomes effective.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box:

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box:

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer:

Accelerated filer:

Non-accelerated filer:

Smaller reporting company:

Emerging growth company:

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of Securities Act.

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

<b>Title of each class of securities to be registered</b>	<b>Amount to be registered<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Proposed maximum offering price per unit</b>	<b>Proposed maximum aggregate offering price<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Amount of registration fee<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Warrants	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Debt Securities	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Subscription Rights	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Units <sup>(4)</sup>	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
<b>TOTAL:</b>			<b>\$ 100,000,000</b>	<b>\$ 10,910.00</b>

(1) An indeterminate amount of the securities of each identified class is being registered as may from time to time be offered hereunder at indeterminate prices, along with an indeterminate number of securities that may be issued upon exercise, settlement, exchange or conversion of securities offered or sold hereunder. These securities may also be sold separately, together or as units with the other securities registered hereunder. The securities registered hereunder will have an aggregate offering price that does not exceed \$100,000,000 or the equivalent in any other currency, currency unit or units, or composite currency or currencies.

(2) Not required to be included in accordance with General Instruction II.D. of Form S-3 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

(3) Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act.

(4) Each unit will consist of one or more common shares, preferred shares, warrants, debt securities, subscription rights or any combination of such securities, which may or may not be separable from one another.

**The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

---



---



---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

This registration statement contains two prospectuses:

- a base prospectus which covers the offering, issuance and sale by the registrant of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$100,000,000 of the registrant's common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, subscription rights and/or units from time to time in one or more offerings; and
- an equity distribution agreement prospectus covering the offering, issuance and sale by the registrant of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$25,000,000 of the registrant's common stock that may be issued and sold under an equity distribution agreement with Oppenheimer & Co. Inc.

The base prospectus immediately follows this explanatory note. The specific terms of any securities to be offered pursuant to the base prospectus will be specified in a prospectus supplement to the base prospectus. The equity distribution agreement prospectus immediately follows the base prospectus. The common stock that may be offered, issued and sold by the registrant under the equity distribution agreement prospectus is included in the \$100,000,000 of securities that may be offered, issued and sold by the registrant under the base prospectus. Upon termination of the equity distribution agreement with Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., any portion of the \$25,000,000 included in the equity distribution agreement prospectus that is not sold pursuant to the equity distribution agreement will be available for sale in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus and a corresponding prospectus supplement, and if no shares are sold under the equity distribution agreement, the full \$25,000,000 of securities may be sold in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus.

---

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. A registration statement relating to these securities has been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and does not solicit an offer to buy these securities in any state or other jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Subject to completion, dated March 16, 2021

PROSPECTUS

Motus GI Holdings, Inc.



\$100,000,000

Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Warrants  
Debt Securities  
Subscription Rights  
Units

---

We may offer, issue and sell from time to time together or separately, in one or more offerings, any combination of (i) our common stock, (ii) our preferred stock, which we may issue in one or more series, (iii) warrants, (iv) senior or subordinated debt securities, (v) subscription rights and (vi) units. The debt securities may consist of debentures, notes, or other types of debt. The debt securities, preferred stock, warrants and subscription rights may be convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for, common or preferred stock or other securities of ours. The units may consist of any combination of the securities listed above.

The aggregate public offering price of the securities that we are offering will not exceed \$100,000,000. We will offer the securities in an amount and on terms that market conditions will determine at the time of the offering. Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "MOTS." The last reported sale price for our common stock on March 15, 2021 as quoted on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$1.60 per share. You are urged to obtain current market quotations of our common stock. We have no preferred stock, warrants, debt securities, subscription rights or units listed on any market. Each prospectus supplement will indicate if the securities offered thereby will be listed on any securities exchange.

**Investing in our securities involves risk. You should carefully consider the risks that we refer you to under the section captioned Risk Factors in this prospectus on page 3 before buying our securities.**

Should we offer any of the securities described in this prospectus, we will provide you with the specific terms of the particular securities being offered in supplements to this prospectus. You should read this prospectus and any supplement, together with additional information described under the headings "Additional Information" and "Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference" carefully before you invest. This prospectus may not be used to sell securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

We may sell these securities directly to our stockholders or to other purchasers or through agents on our behalf or through underwriters or dealers as designated from time to time. If any agents or underwriters are involved in the sale of any of these securities, the applicable prospectus supplement will provide the names of the agents or underwriters and any applicable fees, commissions or discounts.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

The date of this prospectus is , 2021

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	1
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</a>	2
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	3
<a href="#">FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	4
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	6
<a href="#">THE SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER</a>	7
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</a>	8
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF STOCK WARRANTS</a>	12
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</a>	13
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS</a>	19
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</a>	20
<a href="#">FORMS OF SECURITIES</a>	21
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	23
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	27
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	27
<a href="#">ADDITIONAL INFORMATION</a>	27
<a href="#">INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE</a>	28

### **ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may from time to time offer and sell, in one or more offerings, any or all of the securities described in this prospectus, separately or together, up to an aggregate offering price of \$100,000,000. This prospectus provides you with a general description of our securities being offered. When we issue the securities being offered by this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement (which term includes, as applicable, the equity distribution agreement prospectus filed with the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part) that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. You should read both this prospectus and any prospectus supplement together with additional information described under the heading “Additional Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference.”

You may only rely on the information contained in this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement or in any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you to. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different information. This prospectus and any prospectus supplement do not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy any securities other than the securities offered by this prospectus and the prospectus supplement. This prospectus and any prospectus supplement do not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy any securities in any circumstances in which such offer or solicitation is unlawful. Neither the delivery of this prospectus or any prospectus supplement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in our affairs since the date of this prospectus or such prospectus supplement or that the information contained by reference to this prospectus or any prospectus supplement is correct as of any time after its date.

Motus GI Holdings, Inc. is referred to herein as “Motus,” “the Company,” “we,” “us,” and “our,” unless the context indicates otherwise.

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

The following summary highlights some information from this prospectus. It is not complete and does not contain all of the information that you should consider before making an investment decision. You should read this entire prospectus, including the “Risk Factors” section on page 3 and the disclosures to which that section refers you, the financial statements and related notes and the other more detailed information appearing elsewhere or incorporated by reference into this prospectus before investing in any of the securities described in this prospectus.

### **About Us**

We have developed the Pure-Vu System (the “Pure-Vu System”), a medical device that has received 510(k) clearance from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “FDA”). In June 2019, the 510(k) premarket notification for the second-generation of the Pure-Vu System was reviewed and cleared by the FDA. The second-generation of our Pure-Vu System has received CE Mark approval in the European Economic Area. The Pure-Vu System is indicated to help facilitate the cleaning of a poorly prepared colon during the colonoscopy procedure. The device integrates with standard and slim colonoscopes to enable safe and rapid cleansing during the procedure while preserving established procedural workflow and techniques by irrigating the colon and evacuating the irrigation fluid (water), feces and other bodily fluids and matter. We believe that the technology may be useful in the future as a tool to help reduce user dependency on conventional pre-procedural bowel prep regimens. Challenges with bowel preparation for inpatient colonoscopy represent a significant area of unmet need that directly affects clinical outcomes and increases the cost of care for a hospital in a market segment where most of the reimbursement is under a bundle payment based on a Medicare Severity Diagnostic Related Group (a “MS-DRG”). Based on our review and analysis of 2019 market data and 2021 projections for the U.S. and Europe, as obtained from iData Research Inc., we estimate that during 2021 approximately 1.5 million inpatient colonoscopy procedures will be performed in the U.S. and approximately 4.8 million inpatient colonoscopy procedures will be performed worldwide. The Pure-Vu System does not currently have a unique reimbursement code with any private or governmental third-party payors in any country. We began commercialization in the fourth quarter of 2019, with the first commercial placements of our second generation Pure-Vu System as part of our initial U.S. market launch targeting early adopter hospitals. We do not expect to generate significant revenue from product sales until the COVID-19 pandemic has subsided and we expand our commercialization efforts for the Pure-Vu System, which is subject to significant uncertainty.

### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company**

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”), and, for as long as we continue to be an “emerging growth company,” we may choose to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies but not to “emerging growth companies,” including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, (the “Sarbanes-Oxley Act”), reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could be an “emerging growth company” for up to five years from the date of our initial public offering in February 2018, or until the earliest of (i) the last day of the first fiscal year in which our annual gross revenues exceed \$1.07 billion, (ii) the date that we become a “large accelerated filer” as defined in Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act, which would occur if the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our most recently completed second fiscal quarter, or (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt during the preceding three-year period. We intend to take advantage of these reporting exemptions described above until we are no longer an “emerging growth company.” Under the JOBS Act, “emerging growth companies” can also delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies.”

### **Corporate Information**

We are a Delaware corporation formed in September 2016 under the name Eight-Ten Merger Corp. In November 2016, we changed our name to Motus GI Holdings, Inc. We are the parent company of Motus GI Medical Technologies Ltd., an Israeli corporation, and Motus GI, LLC (formerly Motus GI, Inc.), a Delaware limited liability company.

Our principal executive offices are located at 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL 33301. Our phone number is (954) 541-8000 and our web address is [www.motusgi.com](http://www.motusgi.com). Our website and the information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in, and are not considered a part of, this prospectus. You should not rely on our website or any such information in making your decision whether to purchase our securities.

## **RISK FACTORS**

Before purchasing any of the securities you should carefully consider the risk factors incorporated by reference in this prospectus from our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and any subsequent updates described in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, as well as the risks, uncertainties and additional information set forth in our SEC reports on Forms 10-K, 10-Q and 8-K and in the other documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus. For a description of these reports and documents, and information about where you can find them, see “Additional Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Information By Reference.” Additional risks not presently known or that we presently consider to be immaterial could subsequently materially and adversely affect our financial condition, results of operations, business and prospects.

## FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus contain, and our officers and representatives may from time to time make, “forward-looking statements,” which include information relating to future events, future financial performance, financial projections, strategies, expectations, competitive environment and regulation. Words such as “may,” “should,” “could,” “would,” “predicts,” “potential,” “continue,” “expects,” “anticipates,” “future,” “intends,” “plans,” “believes,” “estimates,” “goal,” “seek,” “project,” “strategy,” “likely,” and similar expressions, as well as statements in future tense, identify forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements are neither historical facts, nor should they be read as a guarantee of future performance or results and may not be accurate indications of when such performance or results will be achieved. Forward-looking statements are based on information we have when those statements are made or management’s good faith belief as of that time with respect to future events, and are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual performance or results to differ materially from those expressed in or suggested by the forward-looking statements. Important factors that could cause such differences include, but are not limited to:

- our limited operating history;
- our history of operating losses in each year since inception and expectation that we will continue to incur operating losses for the foreseeable future;
- our current and future capital requirements to support our development and commercialization efforts for the Pure-Vu System and our ability to satisfy our capital needs;
- our dependence on the Pure-Vu System, our sole product;
- our ability to obtain approval from regulatory agents in different jurisdictions for the Pure-Vu System;
- our Pure-Vu System and the procedure to cleanse the colon in preparation for colonoscopy are not currently separately reimbursable through private or governmental third-party payors;
- our lack of a developed sales and marketing organization and our ability to commercialize the Pure-Vu System;
- our dependence on third-parties to manufacture the Pure-Vu System;
- our ability to maintain or protect the validity of our patents and other intellectual property;
- our ability to retain key executives and medical and science personnel;
- our ability to internally develop new inventions and intellectual property;
- interpretations of current laws and the passages of future laws;
- acceptance of our business model by investors;
- the accuracy of our estimates regarding expenses and capital requirements;
- our ability to adequately support growth; and
- our ability to project in the short term the hospital medical device environment considering the global pandemic and strains on hospital systems.

The foregoing does not represent an exhaustive list of matters that may be covered by the forward-looking statements contained herein and in the documents incorporated by reference herein or risk factors that we are faced with that may cause our actual results to differ from those anticipated in our forward-looking statements. Factors that may affect our results include, but are not limited to, the risks and uncertainties discussed in the “Risk Factors” section on page 3 of this prospectus, in our Annual Report on Form 10-K or in other reports we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission.



Moreover, new risks regularly emerge and it is not possible for our management to predict or articulate all risks we face, nor can we assess the impact of all risks on our business or the extent to which any risk, or combination of risks, may cause actual results to differ from those contained in any forward-looking statements. The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, do not protect any forward-looking statements that we make in connection with this offering. All forward-looking statements included in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus are based on information available to us on the date of this prospectus or the date of the applicable document incorporated by reference. Except to the extent required by applicable laws or rules, we undertake no obligation, and expressly disclaim any obligation, to publicly update or revise or correct any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, that may be made from time to time, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. All subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us or persons acting on our behalf are expressly qualified in their entirety by the cautionary statements contained above and throughout this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We qualify all of our forward-looking statements by these cautionary statements.

You should rely only on the information in this prospectus. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely upon it.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless we inform you otherwise in the prospectus supplement, we will use the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered by this prospectus and the exercise price from the exercise of any convertible securities, if any, to fund commercialization activities for our Pure-Vu System, to continue research and development activities, including clinical and regulatory development and for the continued development and enhancement of the Pure-Vu System, and acquisitions or investments in businesses, products or technologies that are complementary to our own. We intend to use the remaining net proceeds for working capital and other general corporate purposes.

When particular securities are offered, the prospectus supplement relating to that offering will set forth our intended use of the net proceeds received from the sale of those securities we sell. Pending the application of the net proceeds for these purposes, we expect to invest the proceeds in short-term, interest-bearing instruments or other investment-grade securities.

## THE SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER

### General

The descriptions of the securities contained in this prospectus, together with the applicable prospectus supplements, summarize all of the material terms and provisions of the various types of securities that we may offer. We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to any securities the particular terms of the securities offered by that prospectus supplement. If we indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, the terms of the securities may differ from the terms we have summarized below. We may also include in the prospectus supplement information about material United States federal income tax considerations relating to the securities, and the securities exchange, if any, on which the securities will be listed.

We may sell from time to time, in one or more offerings:

- common stock;
- preferred stock;
- debt securities;
- subscription rights to purchase shares of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities;
- warrants to purchase shares of common stock or preferred stock; and
- units consisting of any combination of the securities listed above.

In this prospectus, we refer to the common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, subscription rights, warrants and units collectively as “securities.” The total dollar amount of all securities that we may sell will not exceed \$100,000,000.

If we issue debt securities at a discount from their original stated principal amount, then, for purposes of calculating the total dollar amount of all securities issued under this prospectus, we will treat the initial offering price of the debt securities as the total original principal amount of the debt securities.

This prospectus may not be used to consummate a sale of securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

### General

Our authorized capital stock consists of:

- 115,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share; and
- 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share.

As of close of business on March 11, 2021, 46,748,113 shares of our common stock were issued and outstanding and no shares of our preferred stock were issued and outstanding.

The additional shares of our authorized capital stock available for issuance may be issued at times and under circumstances so as to have a dilutive effect on earnings per share and on the equity ownership of the holders of our common stock. The ability of our board of directors to issue additional shares of stock could enhance the board's ability to negotiate on behalf of the stockholders in a takeover situation but could also be used by the board to make a change-in-control more difficult, thereby denying stockholders the potential to sell their shares at a premium and entrenching current management. The following description is a summary of the material provisions of our capital stock. You should refer to our certificate of incorporation, as amended and bylaws, both of which are on file with the SEC as exhibits to previous SEC filings, for additional information. The summary below is qualified by provisions of applicable law.

### Common Stock

*Voting.* The holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters on which the holders are entitled to vote (or consent to). When a quorum is present at any meeting of stockholders, any matter before any such meeting (other than an election of a director or directors) shall be decided by a majority of the votes properly cast on such matter, except where a different vote is required by our certificate of incorporation, as amended, by our bylaws, by law, by the rules or regulations of any stock exchange applicable to us, or pursuant to any regulation applicable to us or our securities, in which case, such different vote shall apply. A majority in voting power of the shares entitled to vote at the meeting, present in person or represented by proxy, shall constitute a quorum at any meeting of stockholders.

*Dividends.* The holders of our common stock are entitled to receive, ratably, dividends only if, when and as declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available therefor and after provision is made for each class of capital stock having preference over our common stock.

*Liquidation Rights.* In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding-up, the holders of our common stock are entitled to share, ratably, in all assets remaining available for distribution after payment of all liabilities and after provision is made for each class of capital stock having preference over our common stock.

*Conversion Right.* The holders of our common stock have no conversion rights.

*Preemptive and Similar Rights.* The holders of our common stock have no preemptive or similar rights.

*Redemption/Put Rights.* There are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to our common stock. All of the outstanding shares of our common stock are fully-paid and non-assessable.

*Transfer Restrictions.* Shares of our common stock are subject to transfer restrictions. Holders of our common stock may not transfer their securities unless (a) a registration statement is in effect under the Securities Act covering the proposed transfer and such transfer is made in accordance with such registration statement or (b) the securities are transferred in a transaction exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act and any related requirements imposed by applicable state securities laws. In the case of any transfer permitted under clause (b), the holder must notify us in writing of the proposed transfer and furnish us with an opinion of counsel, reasonably satisfactory to us, that the transfer will not require registration under the Securities Act or any applicable state securities laws. Each certificate representing a security may contain a legend referring to this restriction on transfer and any legends required by state securities laws.

## Transfer Agent and Registrar

Continental Stock Transfer and Trust, located at 1 State Street 30th Floor, New York, NY 10004, is the transfer agent and registrar for our common stock.

## Preferred Stock

We are authorized to issue up to 10,000,000 shares of “blank check” preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, with such designations, rights, and preferences as may be determined from time to time by our board of directors. Accordingly, our board of directors is empowered, without stockholder approval, to issue preferred stock with dividend, liquidation, conversion, voting, or other rights that could adversely affect the voting power or other rights of the holders of our common stock. The issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of restricting dividends on our common stock, diluting the voting power of our common stock, impairing the liquidation rights of our common stock, or delaying or preventing a change in control of our company.

If we offer a specific series of preferred stock under this prospectus, we will describe the terms of the preferred stock in the prospectus supplement for such offering and will file a copy of the certificate establishing the terms of the preferred stock with the SEC. To the extent required, this description will include:

- the title and stated value;
- the number of shares offered, the liquidation preference per share and the purchase price;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) and/or payment date(s), or method(s) of calculation for such dividends;
- whether dividends will be cumulative or non-cumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends will accumulate;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing, if any;
- the provisions for a sinking fund, if any;
- the provisions for redemption, if applicable;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange or market;
- whether the preferred stock will be convertible into our common stock, and, if applicable, the conversion price (or how it will be calculated) and conversion period;
- whether the preferred stock will be exchangeable into debt securities, and, if applicable, the exchange price (or how it will be calculated) and exchange period;
- voting rights, if any, of the preferred stock;
- a discussion of any material and/or special U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs; and
- any material limitations on issuance of any class or series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up our Company.

## Transfer Agent and Registrar for Preferred Stock

The transfer agent and registrar for any series or class of preferred stock will be set forth in each applicable prospectus supplement.

## Anti-takeover Effects of Delaware Law and our Certificate of Incorporation, as amended, and Bylaws

Our certificate of incorporation, as amended, and bylaws contain provisions that could have the effect of discouraging potential acquisition proposals or tender offers or delaying or preventing a change of control. These provisions are as follows:

- they provide that special meetings of stockholders may be called by the board of directors or at the request in writing by stockholders of record owning at least twenty (20%) percent of the issued and outstanding voting shares of our common stock;
- they do not include a provision for cumulative voting in the election of directors. Under cumulative voting, a minority stockholder holding a sufficient number of shares may be able to ensure the election of one or more directors. The absence of cumulative voting may have the effect of limiting the ability of minority stockholders to effect changes in our board of directors; and
- they allow us to issue, without stockholder approval, up to 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock that could adversely affect the rights and powers of the holders of our common stock.

We are subject to the provisions of Section 203 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (“DGCL”), an anti-takeover law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a “business combination” with an “interested stockholder” for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is approved in the following prescribed manner:

- prior to the time of the transaction, the board of directors of the corporation approved either the business combination or the transaction which resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon completion of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the stockholder owned at least eighty-five percent (85%) of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding for purposes of determining the number of shares outstanding: (1) shares owned by persons who are directors and also officers and (2) shares owned by employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; and
- on or subsequent to the time of the transaction, the business combination is approved by the board and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least sixty-six and two-thirds percent (66 2/3%) of the outstanding voting stock which is not owned by the interested stockholder.

Generally, for purposes of Section 203, a “business combination” includes a merger, asset or stock sale, or other transaction resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder. An “interested stockholder” is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns or, within three (3) years prior to the determination of interested stockholder status, owned fifteen percent (15%) or more of a corporation’s outstanding voting securities.

### ***Requirements for Advance Notification of Stockholder Nominations and Proposals***

Our bylaws establish advance notice procedures with respect to stockholder proposals and the nomination of candidates for election as directors, other than nominations made by or at the direction of our board of directors or a committee of our board of directors. These provisions may have the effect of precluding the conduct of certain business at a meeting if the proper procedures are not followed. These provisions may also discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect the acquirer's own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of our company.

### ***Choice of Forum***

Our certificate of incorporation, as amended, provides that, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the exclusive forum for any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; any action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty; any action asserting a claim against us, or any of our officers or Directors, arising pursuant to the DGCL, our certificate of incorporation, as amended, or our bylaws; or any action asserting a claim against us that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. This exclusive forum provision may limit the ability of our stockholders to bring a claim in a judicial forum that such stockholders find favorable for the disputes listed above, which may discourage such lawsuits against us, or any of our officers or directors.

### **Potential Effects of Authorized but Unissued Stock**

We have shares of common stock and preferred stock available for future issuance without stockholder approval. We may utilize these additional shares for a variety of corporate purposes, including future public offerings to raise additional capital, to facilitate corporate acquisitions or payment as a dividend on the capital stock.

The existence of unissued and unreserved common stock and preferred stock may enable our board of directors to issue shares to persons friendly to current management or to issue preferred stock with terms that could render more difficult or discourage a third-party attempt to obtain control of us by means of a merger, tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise, thereby protecting the continuity of our management. In addition, the board of directors has the discretion to determine designations, rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions, including voting rights, dividend rights, conversion rights, redemption privileges and liquidation preferences of each series of preferred stock, all to the fullest extent permissible under the DGCL and subject to any limitations set forth in our certificate of incorporation, as amended. The purpose of authorizing the board of directors to issue preferred stock and to determine the rights and preferences applicable to such preferred stock is to eliminate delays associated with a stockholder vote on specific issuances. The issuance of preferred stock, while providing desirable flexibility in connection with possible financings, acquisitions and other corporate purposes, could have the effect of making it more difficult for a third-party to acquire, or could discourage a third-party from acquiring, a majority of our outstanding voting stock.

## DESCRIPTION OF STOCK WARRANTS

We summarize below some of the provisions that will apply to the warrants unless the applicable prospectus supplement provides otherwise. This summary may not contain all information that is important to you. The complete terms of the warrants will be contained in the applicable warrant certificate and warrant agreement. These documents have been or will be included or incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. You should read the warrant certificate and the warrant agreement. You should also read the prospectus supplement, which will contain additional information and which may update or change some of the information below.

### General

We may issue warrants to purchase our debt or equity securities or securities of third parties or other rights, including rights to receive payment in cash or securities based on the value, rate or price of one or more specified commodities, currencies, securities or indices, or any combination of the foregoing. Warrants may be issued independently or together with any other securities and may be attached to, or separate from, such securities. Each series of warrants will be issued under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a bank, trust company or other financial institution, as warrant agent, or we may issue warrants directly to investors. A description of the terms and material provisions of any warrants we may issue will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the following terms of any warrants in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the title of such warrants;
- the aggregate number of such warrants;
- the price or prices at which such warrants will be issued;
- the currency or currencies in which the price of such warrants will be payable;
- the securities or other rights, including rights to receive payment in cash or securities based on the value, rate or price of one or more specified commodities, currencies, securities or indices, or any combination of the foregoing, purchasable upon exercise of such warrants;
- the price at which and the currency or currencies in which the securities or other rights purchasable upon exercise of such warrants may be purchased;
- the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right shall expire;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants which may be exercised at any one time;
- provision for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price of such warrants, if any;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which such warrants are issued and the number of such warrants issued with each such security;
- if applicable, the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- if applicable, a discussion of any material United States Federal income tax or foreign income tax considerations; and
- any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

### Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar, if any, for any warrants will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.



## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

This prospectus describes certain general terms and provisions of debt securities that we may offer. The debt securities may be issued pursuant to, in the case of senior debt securities, a senior indenture, and in the case of subordinated debt securities, a subordinated indenture, in each case in the forms filed as exhibits to this registration statement, which we refer to as the "indentures." The indentures will be entered into between us and a trustee to be named prior to the issuance of any debt securities, which we refer to as the "trustee." The indentures will not limit the amount of debt securities that can be issued thereunder and will provide that the debt securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series pursuant to the terms of one or more securities resolutions or supplemental indentures creating such series.

We have summarized below the material provisions of the indentures and the debt securities or indicated which material provisions will be described in the related prospectus supplement for any offering of debt securities. These descriptions are only summaries, and you should refer to the relevant indenture for the particular offering of debt securities itself which will describe completely the terms and definitions of the offered debt securities and contain additional information about the debt securities.

### Terms

When we offer to sell a particular series of debt securities, we will describe the specific terms of the securities in a prospectus supplement. The prospectus supplement will set forth the following terms, as applicable, of the debt securities offered thereby:

- the designation, aggregate principal amount, currency or composite currency and denominations;
- the price at which such debt securities will be issued and, if an index formula or other method is used, the method for determining amounts of principal or interest;
- the maturity date and other dates, if any, on which principal will be payable;
- whether or not the debt securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- whether the debt securities rank as senior debt, senior subordinated debt, subordinated debt or any combination thereof, and the terms of any subordination;
- the interest rate (which may be fixed or variable), if any;
- the date or dates from which interest will accrue and on which interest will be payable, and the record dates for the payment of interest;
- the manner of paying principal and interest;
- the place or places where principal and interest will be payable;
- the terms of any mandatory or optional redemption by us or any third party including any sinking fund;
- the terms of any conversion or exchange;
- the terms of any redemption at the option of holders or put by the holders;
- any tax indemnity provisions;

- if the debt securities provide that payments of principal or interest may be made in a currency other than that in which the debt securities are denominated, the manner for determining such payments;
- the portion of principal payable upon acceleration of a Discounted Debt Security (as defined below);
- whether and upon what terms debt securities may be defeased;
- any events of default or covenants in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in the indentures;
- provisions for electronic issuance of debt securities or for the issuance of debt securities in uncertificated form; and
- any additional provisions or other special terms not inconsistent with the provisions of the indentures, including any terms that may be required or advisable under United States or other applicable laws or regulations, or advisable in connection with the marketing of the debt securities.

Debt securities of any series may be issued as registered debt securities or uncertificated debt securities, in such denominations as specified in the terms of the series.

Securities may be issued under the indentures as Discounted Debt Securities to be offered and sold at a substantial discount from the principal amount thereof. Special United States federal income tax and other considerations applicable thereto will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such Discounted Debt Securities. "Discounted Debt Security" means a security where the amount of principal due upon acceleration is less than the stated principal amount.

We are not obligated to issue all debt securities of one series at the same time and, unless otherwise provided in the prospectus supplement, we may reopen a series, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities of that series, for the issuance of additional debt securities of that series. Additional debt securities of a particular series will have the same terms and conditions as outstanding debt securities of such series, except for the date of original issuance and the offering price, and will be consolidated with, and form a single series with, such outstanding debt securities.

### **Ranking**

The senior debt securities will rank equally with all of our other senior and unsubordinated debt. Our secured debt, if any, will be effectively senior to the senior debt securities to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt. The subordinated debt securities will be subordinate and junior in right of payment to all of our present and future senior indebtedness to the extent and in the manner described in the prospectus supplement and as set forth in the board resolution, officer's certificate or supplemental indenture relating to such offering.

We have only a stockholder's claim on the assets of our subsidiaries. This stockholder's claim is junior to the claims that creditors of our subsidiaries have against our subsidiaries. Holders of our debt securities will be our creditors and not creditors of any of our subsidiaries. As a result, all the existing and future liabilities of our subsidiaries, including any claims of their creditors, will effectively be senior to the debt securities with respect to the assets of our subsidiaries. In addition, to the extent that we issue any secured debt, the debt securities will be effectively subordinated to such secured debt to the extent of the value of the assets securing such secured debt.

The debt securities will be obligations exclusively of Motus GI Holdings, Inc. To the extent that our ability to service our debt, including the debt securities, may be dependent upon the earnings of our subsidiaries, our ability to do so will be dependent on the ability of our subsidiaries to distribute those earnings to us as dividends, loans or other payments.

**Certain Covenants**

Any covenants that may apply to a particular series of debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating thereto.

**Successor Obligor**

The indentures provide that, unless otherwise specified in the securities resolution or supplemental indenture establishing a series of debt securities, we shall not consolidate with or merge into, or transfer all or substantially all of our assets to, any person in any transaction in which we are not the survivor, unless:

- the person is organized under the laws of the United States or a jurisdiction within the United States;
- the person assumes by supplemental indenture all of our obligations under the relevant indenture, the debt securities and any coupons;
- immediately after the transaction no Default (as defined below) exists; and
- we deliver to the trustee an officers' certificate and opinion of counsel stating that the transaction complies with the foregoing requirements and that all conditions precedent provided for in the indenture relating to the transaction have been complied with.

In such event, the successor will be substituted for us, and thereafter all of our obligations under the relevant indenture, the debt securities and any coupons will terminate.

The indentures provide that these limitations shall not apply if our board of directors makes a good faith determination that the principal purpose of the transaction is to change our state of incorporation.

**Exchange of Debt Securities**

Registered debt securities may be exchanged for an equal aggregate principal amount of registered debt securities of the same series and date of maturity in such authorized denominations as may be requested upon surrender of the registered debt securities at an agency of the Company maintained for such purpose and upon fulfillment of all other requirements of such agent.

**Default and Remedies**

Unless the securities resolution or supplemental indenture establishing the series otherwise provides (in which event the prospectus supplement will so state), an "Event of Default" with respect to a series of debt securities will occur if:

- (1) we default in any payment of interest on any debt securities of such series when the same becomes due and payable and the default continues for a period of 30 days;
- (2) we default in the payment of all or any part of the principal and premium, if any, of any debt securities of such series when the same becomes due and payable at maturity or upon redemption, acceleration or otherwise and such default shall continue for five or more days;
- (3) we default in the performance of any of our other agreements applicable to the series and the default continues for 30 days after the notice specified below;

- (4) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law (as defined below) that:
- (A) is for relief against us in an involuntary case,
  - (B) appoints a Custodian (as defined below) for us or for any substantial part of our property, or
  - (C) orders the winding up or liquidation of us, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 consecutive days;
- (5) we, pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:
- (A) commence a voluntary case,
  - (B) consent to the entry of an order for relief against us in an involuntary case,
  - (C) consent to the appointment of a Custodian for us or for any substantial part of our property, or
  - (D) make a general assignment for the benefit of our creditors; or
- (6) there occurs any other Event of Default provided for in such series.

The term “Bankruptcy Law” means Title 11 of the United States Code or any similar Federal or State law for the relief of debtors. The term “Custodian” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or a similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“Default” means any event which is, or after notice or passage of time would be, an Event of Default. A Default under subparagraph (3) above is not an Event of Default until the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the series notify us of the Default and we do not cure the Default within the time specified after receipt of the notice.

The trustee may require indemnity satisfactory to it before it enforces the indentures or the debt securities of the series. Subject to certain limitations, holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of the series may direct the trustee in its exercise of any trust or power with respect to such series. Except in the case of Default in payment on a series, the trustee may withhold from securityholders of such series notice of any continuing Default if the trustee determines that withholding notice is in the interest of such securityholders. We are required to furnish the trustee annually a brief certificate as to our compliance with all conditions and covenants under the indentures.

The indentures do not have cross-default provisions. Thus, a default by us on any other debt, including any other series of debt securities, would not constitute an Event of Default.

## Amendments and Waivers

The indentures and the debt securities or any coupons of the series may be amended, and any Default may be waived as follows:

Unless the securities resolution or supplemental indenture otherwise provides (in which event the applicable prospectus supplement will so state), the debt securities and the indentures may be amended with the consent of the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of all series affected voting as one class. Unless the securities resolution or supplemental indenture otherwise provides (in which event the applicable prospectus supplement will so state), a Default other than a Default in payment on a particular series may be waived with the consent of the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of the series. However, without the consent of each securityholder affected, no amendment or waiver may:

- change the fixed maturity of or the time for payment of interest on any debt security;
- reduce the principal, premium or interest payable with respect to any debt security;
- change the place of payment of a debt security or the currency in which the principal or interest on a debt security is payable;
- change the provisions for calculating any redemption or repurchase price with respect to any debt security;
- adversely affect any holder's right to receive payment of principal and interest or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment;
- reduce the amount of debt securities whose holders must consent to an amendment or waiver;
- make any change that materially adversely affects the right to convert any debt security;
- waive any Default in payment of principal of or interest on a debt security; or
- adversely affect any holder's rights with respect to redemption or repurchase of a debt security.

Without the consent of any securityholder, the indentures or the debt securities may be amended to:

- provide for assumption of our obligations to securityholders in the event of a merger or consolidation requiring such assumption;
- cure any ambiguity, omission, defect or inconsistency;
- conform the terms of the debt securities to the description thereof in the prospectus and prospectus supplement offering such debt securities;
- create a series and establish its terms;
- provide for the acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee or to facilitate the administration of the trusts by more than one trustee;
- provide for uncertificated or unregistered securities;
- make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any securityholder;
- add to our covenants; or
- make any other change to the indentures so long as no debt securities are outstanding.

## **Conversion Rights**

Any securities resolution or supplemental indenture establishing a series of debt securities may provide that the debt securities of such series will be convertible at the option of the holders thereof into or for our common stock or other equity or debt instruments. The securities resolution or supplemental indenture may establish, among other things, (1) the number or amount of shares of common stock or other equity or debt instruments for which \$1,000 aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of the series is convertible, as may be adjusted pursuant to the terms of the relevant indenture and the securities resolution; and (2) provisions for adjustments to the conversion rate and limitations upon exercise of the conversion right. The indentures provide that we will not be required to make an adjustment in the conversion rate unless the adjustment would require a cumulative change of at least 1% in the conversion rate. However, we will carry forward any adjustments that are less than 1% of the conversion rate and take them into account in any subsequent adjustment of the conversion rate.

## **Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

Debt securities of a series may be defeased in accordance with their terms and, unless the securities resolution or supplemental indenture establishing the terms of the series otherwise provides, as set forth below. We at any time may terminate as to a series all of our obligations (except for certain obligations, including obligations with respect to the defeasance trust and obligations to register the transfer or exchange of a debt security, to replace destroyed, lost or stolen debt securities and coupons and to maintain paying agencies in respect of the debt securities) with respect to the debt securities of the series and any related coupons and the relevant indenture, which we refer to as legal defeasance. We at any time may terminate as to a series our obligations with respect to any restrictive covenants which may be applicable to a particular series, which we refer to as covenant defeasance.

We may exercise our legal defeasance option notwithstanding our prior exercise of our covenant defeasance option. If we exercise our legal defeasance option, a series may not be accelerated because of an Event of Default. If we exercise our covenant defeasance option, a series may not be accelerated by reference to any covenant which may be applicable to a series.

To exercise either defeasance option as to a series, we must (1) irrevocably deposit in trust with the trustee (or another trustee) money or U.S. Government Obligations (as defined below), deliver a certificate from a nationally recognized firm of independent accountants expressing their opinion that the payments of principal and interest when due on the deposited U.S. Government Obligations, without reinvestment, plus any deposited money without investment will provide cash at such times and in such amounts as will be sufficient to pay the principal and interest when due on all debt securities of such series to maturity or redemption, as the case may be; and (2) comply with certain other conditions. In particular, we must obtain an opinion of tax counsel that the defeasance will not result in recognition of any gain or loss to holders for federal income tax purposes.

“U.S. Government Obligations” means direct obligations of the United States or any agency or instrumentality of the United States, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed by the United States, which, in either case, have the full faith and credit of the United States pledged for payment and which are not callable at the issuer’s option, or certificates representing an ownership interest in such obligations.

## **Regarding the Trustee**

Unless otherwise indicated in a prospectus supplement, the trustee will also act as depository of funds, transfer agent, paying agent and conversion agent, as applicable, with respect to the debt securities. In certain circumstances, we or the securityholders may remove the trustee as the trustee under a given indenture. The indenture trustee may also provide additional unrelated services to us as a depository of funds, registrar, trustee and similar services.

## **Governing Law**

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by New York law, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is applicable.

## DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS

We may issue subscription rights to purchase our equity or debt securities. These subscription rights may be offered independently or together with any other security offered hereby and may or may not be transferable by the stockholder receiving the subscription rights in such offering. In connection with any offering of subscription rights, we may enter into a standby arrangement with one or more underwriters or other purchasers pursuant to which the underwriters or other purchasers may be required to purchase any securities remaining unsubscribed for after such offering.

The prospectus supplement relating to any subscription rights we offer, if any, will, to the extent applicable, include specific terms relating to the offering, including some or all of the following:

- the price, if any, for the subscription rights;
- the exercise price payable for our equity or debt securities upon the exercise of the subscription rights;
- the number of subscription rights to be issued to each stockholder;
- the number and terms of our equity or debt securities which may be purchased per each subscription right;
- the extent to which the subscription rights are transferable;
- any other terms of the subscription rights, including the terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the subscription rights;
- the date on which the right to exercise the subscription rights shall commence, and the date on which the subscription rights shall expire;
- the extent to which the subscription rights may include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities or an over-allotment privilege to the extent the securities are fully subscribed; and
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or purchase arrangement which may be entered into by us in connection with the offering of subscription rights.

## DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

We may issue units comprised of one or more of the other securities described in this prospectus in any combination. Each unit will be issued so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. Thus, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security (but, to the extent convertible securities are included in the units, the holder of the units will be deemed the holder of the convertible securities and not the holder of the underlying securities). The unit agreement under which a unit is issued, if any, may provide that the securities included in the unit may not be held or transferred separately, at any time or at any time before a specified date. The applicable prospectus supplement may describe:

- the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;
- any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units or of the securities comprising the units;
- the terms of the unit agreement governing the units;
- United States federal income tax considerations relevant to the units; and
- whether the units will be issued in fully registered global form.

This summary of certain general terms of units and any summary description of units in the applicable prospectus supplement do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to all provisions of the applicable unit agreement and, if applicable, collateral arrangements and depositary arrangements relating to such units. The forms of the unit agreements and other documents relating to a particular issue of units will be filed with the SEC each time we issue units, and you should read those documents for provisions that may be important to you.



## FORMS OF SECURITIES

Each debt security and, to the extent applicable, warrant, subscription right and unit, will be represented either by a certificate issued in definitive form to a particular investor or by one or more global securities representing the entire issuance of securities. Certificated securities in definitive form and global securities will be issued in registered form. Definitive securities name you or your nominee as the owner of the security, and in order to transfer or exchange these securities or to receive payments other than interest or other interim payments, you or your nominee must physically deliver the securities to the trustee, registrar, paying agent or other agent, as applicable. Global securities name a depository or its nominee as the owner of the debt securities or warrants represented by these global securities. The depository maintains a computerized system that will reflect each investor's beneficial ownership of the securities through an account maintained by the investor with its broker/dealer, bank, trust company or other representative, as we explain more fully below.

### Global Securities

*Registered Global Securities.* We may issue the registered debt securities and, to the extent applicable, warrants, subscription rights and units in the form of one or more fully registered global securities that will be deposited with a depository or its nominee identified in the applicable prospectus supplement and registered in the name of that depository or nominee. In those cases, one or more registered global securities will be issued in a denomination or aggregate denominations equal to the portion of the aggregate principal or face amount of the securities to be represented by registered global securities. Unless and until it is exchanged in whole for securities in definitive registered form, a registered global security may not be transferred except as a whole by and among the depository for the registered global security, the nominees of the depository or any successors of the depository or those nominees.

If not described below, any specific terms of the depository arrangement with respect to any securities to be represented by a registered global security will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to those securities. We anticipate that the following provisions will apply to all depository arrangements.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a registered global security will be limited to persons, called participants, that have accounts with the depository or persons that may hold interests through participants. Upon the issuance of a registered global security, the depository will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the participants' accounts with the respective principal or face amounts of the securities beneficially owned by the participants. Any dealers, underwriters or agents participating in the distribution of the securities will designate the accounts to be credited. Ownership of beneficial interests in a registered global security will be shown on, and the transfer of ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the depository, with respect to interests of participants, and on the records of participants, with respect to interests of persons holding through participants. The laws of some states may require that some purchasers of securities take physical delivery of these securities in definitive form. These laws may impair your ability to own, transfer or pledge beneficial interests in registered global securities.

So long as the depository, or its nominee, is the registered owner of a registered global security, that depository or its nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner or holder of the securities represented by the registered global security for all purposes under the applicable indenture or warrant agreement. Except as described below, owners of beneficial interests in a registered global security will not be entitled to have the securities represented by the registered global security registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of the securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders of the securities under the applicable indenture or warrant agreement. Accordingly, each person owning a beneficial interest in a registered global security must rely on the procedures of the depository for that registered global security and, if that person is not a participant, on the procedures of the participant through which the person owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder under the applicable indenture or warrant agreement. We understand that under existing industry practices, if we request any action of holders or if an owner of a beneficial interest in a registered global security desires to give or take any action that a holder is entitled to give or take under the applicable indenture or warrant agreement, the depository for the registered global security would authorize the participants holding the relevant beneficial interests to give or take that action, and the participants would authorize beneficial owners owning through them to give or take that action or would otherwise act upon the instructions of beneficial owners holding through them.

Principal, premium, if any, and interest payments on debt securities and any payments to holders with respect to warrants represented by a registered global security registered in the name of a depository or its nominee will be made to the depository or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner of the registered global security. None of the Company, the trustees, the warrant agents or any other agent of the Company, agent of the trustees or agent of the warrant will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in the registered global security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to those beneficial ownership interests.

We expect that the depository for any of the securities represented by a registered global security, upon receipt of any payment of principal, premium, interest or other distribution of underlying securities or other property to holders on that registered global security, will immediately credit participants' accounts in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in that registered global security as shown on the records of the depository. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in a registered global security held through participants will be governed by standing customer instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with the securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of those participants.

If the depository for any of these securities represented by a registered global security is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depository or ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), and a successor depository registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act is not appointed by us within 90 days, we will issue securities in definitive form in exchange for the registered global security that had been held by the depository. Any securities issued in definitive form in exchange for a registered global security will be registered in the name or names that the depository gives to the relevant trustee or warrant agent or other relevant agent of ours or theirs. It is expected that the depository's instructions will be based upon directions received by the depository from participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in the registered global security that had been held by the depository.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

### Initial Offering and Sale of Securities

Unless otherwise set forth in a prospectus supplement accompanying this prospectus, we may sell the securities being offered hereby, from time to time, by one or more of the following methods:

- to or through underwriting syndicates represented by managing underwriters;
- through one or more underwriters without a syndicate for them to offer and sell to the public;
- through dealers or agents; and
- to investors directly in negotiated sales or in competitively bid transactions.

Offerings of securities covered by this prospectus also may be made into an existing trading market for those securities in transactions at other than a fixed price, either:

- on or through the facilities of the Nasdaq Capital Market or any other securities exchange or quotation or trading service on which those securities may be listed, quoted, or traded at the time of sale; and/or
- to or through a market maker other than on the securities exchanges or quotation or trading services set forth above.

Those at-the-market offerings, if any, will be conducted by underwriters acting as principal or agent of the Company, who may also be third-party sellers of securities as described above. The prospectus supplement with respect to the offered securities will set forth the terms of the offering of the offered securities, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents;
- the purchase price of the offered securities and the proceeds to us from such sale;
- any underwriting discounts and commissions or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers;
- any securities exchange on which such offered securities may be listed; and
- any underwriter, agent or dealer involved in the offer and sale of any series of the securities.

The distribution of the securities may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions:

- at fixed prices, which may be changed;
- at market prices prevailing at the time of the sale;
- at varying prices determined at the time of sale; or
- at negotiated prices.

Each prospectus supplement will set forth the manner and terms of an offering of securities including:

- whether that offering is being made to underwriters, through agents or directly to the public;
- the rules and procedures for any auction or bidding process, if used;
- the securities' purchase price or initial public offering price; and
- the proceeds we anticipate from the sale of the securities, if any.

In addition, we may enter into derivative or hedging transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. The applicable prospectus supplement may indicate, in connection with such a transaction, that the third parties may sell securities covered by and pursuant to this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement. If so, the third party may use securities pledged by us or borrowed from us or others to settle such sales and may use securities received from us to close out any related short positions. We may also loan or pledge securities covered by this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement to third parties, who may sell the loaned securities or, in an event of default in the case of a pledge, sell the pledged securities pursuant to this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement.

#### **Sales Through Underwriters**

If underwriters are used in the sale of some or all of the securities covered by this prospectus, the underwriters will acquire the securities for their own account. The underwriters may resell the securities, either directly to the public or to securities dealers, at various times in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. The obligations of the underwriters to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions. Unless indicated otherwise in a prospectus supplement, the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all the securities of the series offered if any of the securities are purchased.

Any public offering price and any concessions allowed or reallocated to dealers may be changed intermittently.

#### **Sales Through Agents**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, when securities are sold through an agent, the designated agent will agree, for the period of its appointment as agent, to use specified efforts to sell the securities for our account and will receive commissions from us as will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Securities bought in accordance with a redemption or repayment under their terms also may be offered and sold, if so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, in connection with a remarketing by one or more firms acting as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. Any remarketing firm will be identified and the terms of its agreement, if any, with us and its compensation will be described in the prospectus supplement. Remarketing firms may be deemed to be underwriters in connection with the securities remarketed by them.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may authorize agents, underwriters or dealers to solicit offers by certain specified institutions to purchase securities at a price set forth in the prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date specified in the prospectus supplement. These contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth the commissions payable for solicitation of these contracts.

#### **Direct Sales**

We may also sell offered securities directly to institutional investors or others. In this case, no underwriters or agents would be involved. The terms of such sales will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

#### **General Information**

Broker-dealers, agents or underwriters may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from us and/or the purchasers of securities for whom such broker-dealers, agents or underwriters may act as agents or to whom they sell as principal, or both. This compensation to a particular broker-dealer might be in excess of customary commissions.

Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in any distribution of the offered securities may be deemed “underwriters” within the meaning of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), so any discounts or commissions they receive in connection with the distribution may be deemed to be underwriting compensation. Those underwriters and agents may be entitled, under their agreements with us, to indemnification by us against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution by us to payments that they may be required to make in respect of those civil liabilities. Certain of those underwriters or agents may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us or our affiliates in the ordinary course of business. We will identify any underwriters or agents, and describe their compensation, in a prospectus supplement. Any institutional investors or others that purchase offered securities directly, and then resell the securities, may be deemed to be underwriters, and any discounts or commissions received by them from us and any profit on the resale of the securities by them may be deemed to be underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act.

We will file a supplement to this prospectus, if required, pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, if we enter into any material arrangement with a broker, dealer, agent or underwriter for the sale of securities through a block trade, special offering, exchange distribution or secondary distribution or a purchase by a broker or dealer. Such prospectus supplement will disclose:

- the name of any participating broker, dealer, agent or underwriter;
- the number and type of securities involved;
- the price at which such securities were sold;
- any securities exchanges on which such securities may be listed;
- the commissions paid or discounts or concessions allowed to any such broker, dealer, agent or underwriter, where applicable; and
- other facts material to the transaction.

In order to facilitate the offering of certain securities under this prospectus or an applicable prospectus supplement, certain persons participating in the offering of those securities may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of those securities during and after the offering of those securities. Specifically, if the applicable prospectus supplement permits, the underwriters of those securities may over-allot or otherwise create a short position in those securities for their own account by selling more of those securities than have been sold to them by us and may elect to cover any such short position by purchasing those securities in the open market.

In addition, the underwriters may stabilize or maintain the price of those securities by bidding for or purchasing those securities in the open market and may impose penalty bids, under which selling concessions allowed to syndicate members or other broker-dealers participating in the offering are reclaimed if securities previously distributed in the offering are repurchased in connection with stabilization transactions or otherwise. The effect of these transactions may be to stabilize or maintain the market price of the securities at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. The imposition of a penalty bid may also affect the price of securities to the extent that it discourages resales of the securities. No representation is made as to the magnitude or effect of any such stabilization or other transactions. Such transactions, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

In order to comply with the securities laws of certain states, if applicable, the securities must be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers. In addition, in certain states the securities may not be sold unless they have been registered or qualified for sale in the applicable state or an exemption from the registration or qualification requirement is available and is complied with.

Rule 15c6-1 under the Exchange Act generally requires that trades in the secondary market settle in two business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise. Your prospectus supplement may provide that the original issue date for your securities may be more than two scheduled business days after the trade date for your securities. Accordingly, in such a case, if you wish to trade securities on any date prior to the second business day before the original issue date for your securities, you will be required, by virtue of the fact that your securities initially are expected to settle in more than two scheduled business days after the trade date for your securities, to make alternative settlement arrangements to prevent a failed settlement.

This prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any applicable pricing supplement in electronic format may be made available on the Internet sites of, or through other online services maintained by, us and/or one or more of the agents and/or dealers participating in an offering of securities, or by their affiliates. In those cases, prospective investors may be able to view offering terms online and, depending upon the particular agent or dealer, prospective investors may be allowed to place orders online.

Other than this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any applicable pricing supplement in electronic format, the information on our website or the website of any agent or dealer, and any information contained in any other website maintained by any agent or dealer:

- is not part of this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any applicable pricing supplement or the registration statement of which they form a part;
- has not been approved or endorsed by us or by any agent or dealer in its capacity as an agent or dealer, except, in each case, with respect to the respective website maintained by such entity; and
- should not be relied upon by investors.

There can be no assurance that we will sell all or any of the securities offered by this prospectus.

This prospectus may also be used in connection with any issuance of common stock or preferred stock upon exercise of a warrant if such issuance is not exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

In addition, we may issue the securities as a dividend or distribution or in a subscription rights offering to our existing securityholders. In some cases, we or dealers acting with us or on our behalf may also purchase securities and reoffer them to the public by one or more of the methods described above. This prospectus may be used in connection with any offering of our securities through any of these methods or other methods described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

## LEGAL MATTERS

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the validity of the securities offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Lowenstein Sandler LLP, New York, New York. If the validity of the securities offered hereby in connection with offerings made pursuant to this prospectus are passed upon by counsel for the underwriters, dealers or agents, if any, such counsel will be named in the prospectus supplement relating to such offering.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated balance sheets of Motus GI Holdings, Inc. and Subsidiaries as of December 31, 2020 and 2019, and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive loss, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years then ended have been audited by EisnerAmper LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report which is incorporated herein by reference, which report includes an explanatory paragraph about the existence of substantial doubt concerning the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Such consolidated financial statements have been incorporated herein by reference in reliance on the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities Act with respect to the securities offered by this prospectus. This prospectus, which is part of the registration statement, omits certain information, exhibits, schedules and undertakings set forth in the registration statement. For further information pertaining to us and our securities, reference is made to our SEC filings and the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents or provisions of any documents referred to in this prospectus are not necessarily complete, and in each instance where a copy of the document has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement, reference is made to the exhibit for a more complete description of the matters involved.

In addition, registration statements and certain other filings made with the SEC electronically are publicly available through the SEC's web site at <http://www.sec.gov>. The registration statement, including all exhibits and amendments to the registration statement, has been filed electronically with the SEC.

We are subject to the information and periodic reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and, in accordance with such requirements, will file periodic reports, proxy statements, and other information with the SEC. These periodic reports, proxy statements, and other information will be available for inspection and copying at the web site of the SEC referred to above. We also maintain a website at <http://www.motusgi.com>, at which you may access these materials free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after they are electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of, and is not incorporated into, this prospectus. We have included our website address in this prospectus solely as an inactive textual reference.

You should rely only on the information in this prospectus and the additional information described above and under the heading "Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference" below. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely upon it. We are not making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information in this prospectus was accurate on the date of the front cover of this prospectus only. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.

## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to “incorporate by reference” information that we file with it into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be a part of this prospectus, and information that we file later with the SEC will automatically update and supersede information contained in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement.

We incorporate by reference the documents listed below that we have previously filed with the SEC:

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2020, filed with the SEC on March 16, 2021;
- our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on [January 20, 2021](#) and [January 27, 2021](#) (other than information “furnished” under Items 2.02 or 7.01, or corresponding information furnished under Item 9.01 or included as an exhibit); and
- the description of our common stock contained in our Registration Statement on [Form 8-A](#), filed on February 6, 2018, including any amendments thereto or reports filed for the purposes of updating this description, including the Description of Securities filed as Exhibit 4.15 to our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2020.

All reports and other documents that we file with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the date of this prospectus but prior to the termination of the offering of the securities hereunder will also be considered to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus from the date of the filing of these reports and documents, and will supersede the information herein; *provided, however*, that all reports, exhibits and other information that we “furnish” to the SEC will not be considered incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Any statement contained in a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement shall be deemed to be modified or superseded to the extent that a statement contained herein, therein or in any other subsequently filed document that also is incorporated by reference herein or therein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus or any prospectus supplement.

We will provide you without charge, upon your oral or written request, with a copy of any or all reports, proxy statements and other documents we file with the SEC, as well as any or all of the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus or the registration statement (other than exhibits to such documents unless such exhibits are specifically incorporated by reference into such documents). Requests for such copies should be directed to Motus GI Holdings, Inc., Attn: Chief Financial Officer, 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301. You may also direct any requests for documents to us by telephone at (954) 541-8000 or e-mail at [IR@MotusGI.com](mailto:IR@MotusGI.com).



\$100,000,000

Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Warrants  
Debt Securities  
Subscription Rights  
Units



PROSPECTUS

\_\_\_\_\_, 2021

---

**The information contained in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. A registration statement relating to these securities has been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission. These securities may not be sold nor may offers to buy be accepted prior to the time the registration statement becomes effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities, and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities, nor shall there be any sale of these securities, in any jurisdiction where such offer, solicitation or sale is not permitted or would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such jurisdiction.**

**Subject to completion, dated March 16, 2021**

**PROSPECTUS**



**Up to \$25,000,000**

**Common Stock**

---

We have entered into an equity distribution agreement, or sales agreement, with Oppenheimer & Co. Inc. (the "Agent") relating to the sale of shares of our common stock offered by this prospectus. In accordance with the terms of the sales agreement, we may offer and sell shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$25.0 million from time to time through the Agent, acting as our sales agent, at our discretion.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "MOTS." On March 15, 2021, the last reported sales price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$1.60 per share.

We are an "emerging growth company" as that term is used in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 and, as such, we have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements for this prospectus and may elect to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements for future filings.

Sales of our common stock, if any, under this prospectus may be made in sales deemed to be "at the market offerings" as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act. The Agent is not required to sell any specific number or dollar amount of securities, but will act as a sales agent using commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, on mutually agreed terms between the Agent and us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in any escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

The Agent will receive compensation in the form of a fixed commission rate of 3.0% of the gross proceeds from each sale of common stock sold through the Agent pursuant to the sales agreement. In connection with the sale of the common stock on our behalf, the Agent will be deemed to be an "underwriter" within the meaning of the Securities Act, and the compensation of the Agent will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. See "Plan of Distribution" beginning on page 11 for additional information regarding the compensation to be paid to the Agent. We have also agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to the Agent with respect to certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

**Investing in our securities involves significant risks. Please read the information contained in or incorporated by reference under the heading "Risk Factors" beginning on page 3 of this prospectus, and under similar headings in other documents filed after the date hereof and incorporated by reference into this prospectus.**

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**Oppenheimer & Co.**

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2021.

---

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	ii
<a href="#">SUMMARY</a>	1
<a href="#">THE OFFERING</a>	2
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	3
<a href="#">SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	6
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	8
<a href="#">DIVIDEND POLICY</a>	9
<a href="#">DILUTION</a>	9
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	11
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	12
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	12
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	12
<a href="#">INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE</a>	13

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of registration statement on Form S-3 that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, using a “shelf” registration process. Under the shelf registration process, we may offer shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$25,000,000 from time to time under this prospectus at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of the offering.

This prospectus relates to the offering of our common stock. You should read this prospectus, the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering, in their entirety before making an investment decision. You should also read and consider the information in the documents to which we have referred you in the section of this prospectus entitled “Where You Can Find More Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference.” These documents contain important information that you should consider when making your investment decision.

We provide information to you about this offering of shares of our common stock in this prospectus, which describes the specific terms of this offering of common stock. To the extent there is a conflict between the information contained in this prospectus, on the one hand, and the information contained in any document incorporated by reference that was filed with the SEC before the date of this prospectus, on the other hand, you should rely on the information in this prospectus. If any statement in one of these documents is inconsistent with a statement in another document having a later date — for example, a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus — the statement in the document having the later date modifies or supersedes the earlier statement.

We are responsible for the information contained in, or incorporated by reference into, this prospectus and in any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering. We have not, and the Agent has not, authorized any other person to provide you with different information, and neither we nor the Agent take any responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you.

We are not, and the Agent is not, making an offer to sell or soliciting an offer to buy our common stock in any jurisdiction in which an offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making that offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to anyone to whom it is unlawful to make an offer or solicitation. Persons outside the United States who come into possession of this prospectus must inform themselves about, and observe any restrictions relating to, the offering of our common stock and the distribution of this prospectus outside the United States. This prospectus does not constitute, and may not be used in connection with, an offer to sell, or a solicitation of an offer to buy, any securities offered by this prospectus by any person in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such an offer or solicitation.

You should assume that the information appearing in this prospectus, the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and in any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering, is accurate only as of the date of those respective documents, regardless of the time of delivery of those respective documents. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since those dates.

In this prospectus supplement, “Motus,” the “Company,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to Motus GI Holdings, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, except where the context otherwise requires. This prospectus and the information incorporated herein by reference contain references to trademarks, service marks and trade names owned by us or other companies. Solely for convenience, trademarks, service marks and trade names referred to in this prospectus and the information incorporated herein, including logos, artwork, and other visual displays, may appear without the ® or ™ symbols, but such references are not intended to indicate, in any way, that we will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights or the rights of the applicable licensor to these trademarks, service marks and trade names. We do not intend our use or display of other companies’ trade names, service marks or trademarks to imply a relationship with, or endorsement or sponsorship of us by, any other companies. Other trademarks, trade names and service marks appearing in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners.

## SUMMARY

*This summary highlights selected information about us and this common stock offering. This summary is not complete and may not contain all of the information that is important to you. We encourage you to read this prospectus, including the information under the caption "Risk Factors" and the information we incorporate by reference, in its entirety.*

### Overview

We have developed the Pure-Vu System (the "Pure-Vu System"), a medical device that has received 510(k) clearance from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the "FDA"). In June 2019, the 510(k) premarket notification for the second-generation of the Pure-Vu System was reviewed and cleared by the FDA. The second-generation of our Pure-Vu System has received CE Mark approval in the European Economic Area. The Pure-Vu System is indicated to help facilitate the cleaning of a poorly prepared colon during the colonoscopy procedure. The device integrates with standard and slim colonoscopes to enable safe and rapid cleansing during the procedure while preserving established procedural workflow and techniques by irrigating the colon and evacuating the irrigation fluid (water), feces and other bodily fluids and matter. We believe that the technology may be useful in the future as a tool to help reduce user dependency on conventional pre-procedural bowel prep regimens. Challenges with bowel preparation for inpatient colonoscopy represent a significant area of unmet need that directly affects clinical outcomes and increases the cost of care for a hospital in a market segment where most of the reimbursement is under a bundle payment based on a Medicare Severity Diagnostic Related Group (a "MS-DRG"). Based on our review and analysis of 2019 market data and 2021 projections for the U.S. and Europe, as obtained from iData Research Inc., we estimate that during 2021 approximately 1.5 million inpatient colonoscopy procedures will be performed in the U.S. and approximately 4.8 million inpatient colonoscopy procedures will be performed worldwide. The Pure-Vu System does not currently have a unique reimbursement code with any private or governmental third-party payors in any country. We began commercialization in the fourth quarter of 2019, with the first commercial placements of our second generation Pure-Vu System as part of our initial U.S. market launch targeting early adopter hospitals. We do not expect to generate significant revenue from product sales until the COVID-19 pandemic has subsided and we expand our commercialization efforts for the Pure-Vu System, which is subject to significant uncertainty.

### Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"), and, for as long as we continue to be an "emerging growth company," we may choose to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies but not to "emerging growth companies," including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, (the "Sarbanes-Oxley Act"), reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could be an "emerging growth company" for up to five years from the date of our initial public offering in February 2018, or until the earliest of (i) the last day of the first fiscal year in which our annual gross revenues exceed \$1.07 billion, (ii) the date that we become a "large accelerated filer" as defined in Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act, which would occur if the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our most recently completed second fiscal quarter, or (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt during the preceding three-year period. We intend to take advantage of these reporting exemptions described above until we are no longer an "emerging growth company." Under the JOBS Act, "emerging growth companies" can also delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not "emerging growth companies."

### Corporate Information

We are a Delaware corporation formed in September 2016 under the name Eight-Ten Merger Corp. In November 2016, we changed our name to Motus GI Holdings, Inc. We are the parent company of Motus GI Medical Technologies Ltd., an Israeli corporation, and Motus GI, LLC (formerly Motus GI, Inc.), a Delaware limited liability company.

Our principal executive offices are located at 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL 33301. Our phone number is (954) 541-8000 and our web address is [www.motusgi.com](http://www.motusgi.com). Our website and the information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in, and are not considered a part of, this prospectus. You should not rely on our website or any such information in making your decision whether to purchase our securities.

## THE OFFERING

<b>Common stock offered by us</b>	Shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$25.0 million.
<b>Manner of offering</b>	“At the market offering” that may be made from time to time through the Agent, as our sales agent. See “Plan of Distribution” beginning on page 11 of this prospectus for a more complete description of the manner of offering.
<b>Use of Proceeds</b>	We expect to use the net proceeds of this offering, if any, to fund commercialization activities for our Pure-Vu System, to continue research and development activities, including clinical and regulatory development and for the continued development and enhancement of the Pure-Vu System, and acquisitions or investments in businesses, products or technologies that are complementary to our own. We intend to use the remaining net proceeds for working capital and other general corporate purposes. See “Use of Proceeds” on page 8 of this prospectus supplement for a more complete description of the intended use of proceeds from this offering.
<b>Risk Factors</b>	Investing in our securities involves significant risks. Please read the information contained in or incorporated by reference under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page 3 of this prospectus, and under similar headings in other documents filed after the date hereof and incorporated by reference into this prospectus.
<b>Nasdaq Capital Market symbol</b>	“MOTS”

## RISK FACTORS

*An investment in our shares involves risks. We urge you to carefully consider all of the information contained in or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and other information which may be incorporated by reference in this prospectus as provided under "Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference." In particular, you should consider the risk factors under the heading "Risk Factors" in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, which is incorporated by reference in this prospectus, as those risk factors are amended or supplemented by our subsequent filings with the SEC. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Please read "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements." Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks described in the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus. If any of these risks occur, this could expose us to liability, and our business, financial condition or results of operation could be adversely affected. As a result, you could lose all or part of your investment.*

### **Risks Relating to The Offering**

***You may experience immediate and substantial dilution in the book value per share of the common stock you purchase.***

Because the price per share of our common stock being offered may be higher than the book value per share of our common stock, you may suffer substantial dilution in the net tangible book value of the common stock you purchase in this offering. See the section entitled "Dilution" below for a more detailed discussion of the dilution you will incur if you purchase common stock in this offering. To the extent outstanding stock options or warrants are exercised, there will be further dilution to new investors.

In addition, to the extent we need to raise additional capital in the future and we issue additional shares of common stock or securities convertible or exchangeable for our common stock, our then existing stockholders may experience dilution and the new securities may have rights senior to those of our common stock offered in this offering.

***Sales of a significant number of shares of our common stock in the public markets, or the perception that such sales could occur, could depress the market price of our common stock.***

Sales of a substantial number of our shares of common stock in the public markets, or the perception that such sales could occur, could depress the market price of our shares of common stock and impair our ability to raise capital through the sale of additional equity securities. A substantial number of our outstanding shares of common stock are, and the shares of common stock being offered by this prospectus supplement will be, freely tradable, without restriction, in the public market. Any sales of these shares or any perception in the market that such sales may occur could also cause the trading price of our common stock to decline.

In addition, shares of common stock that are either subject to outstanding options or warrants or reserved for future issuance under our equity incentive plans will be eligible for sale in the public market to the extent permitted by the provisions of various vesting schedules, Rule 144 and Rule 701 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, our effective Registration Statements on Form S-8 and any future registration of such shares under the Securities Act. If these additional shares of common stock are sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline.

***Our share price may be volatile, which could subject us to securities class action litigation and our stockholders could incur substantial losses.***

The market price for our common stock may be volatile and subject to wide fluctuations in response to factors including the following:

- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our quarterly or annual operating results;
- actual or anticipated changes in our growth rate relative to our competitors;
- failure to meet or exceed financial estimates and projections of the investment community or that we provide to the public;
- issuance of new or updated research or reports by securities analysts;
- share price and volume fluctuations attributable to inconsistent trading volume levels of our shares; additions or departures of key management or other personnel;
- disputes or other developments related to proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters, and our ability to obtain patent protection for our technologies;
- announcement or expectation of additional debt or equity financing efforts;
- sales of our common stock by us, our insiders or our other stockholders; and
- general economic, market or political conditions in the United States or elsewhere.

In particular, the market prices of early commercial-stage companies like ours have been highly volatile due to factors, including, but not limited to:

- any delay or failure to conduct a clinical trial for our product or receive approval from the FDA and other regulatory agents;
- developments or disputes concerning our product's intellectual property rights;
- our or our competitors' technological innovations;
- fluctuations in the valuation of companies perceived by investors to be comparable to us;
- announcements by us or our competitors of significant contracts, acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, capital commitments, new technologies or patents;
- failure to complete significant transactions or collaborate with vendors in manufacturing our product; and
- proposals for legislation that would place restrictions on the price of medical therapies or devices.

These and other market and industry factors may cause the market price and demand for our common stock to fluctuate substantially, regardless of our actual operating performance, which may limit or prevent investors from readily selling their shares of common stock and may otherwise negatively affect the liquidity of our common stock. In addition, the stock market in general, and Nasdaq Capital Market and emerging growth companies in particular, have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of these companies. In the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have instituted securities class action litigation against the company that issued the stock. If any of our stockholders brought a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit. Such a lawsuit could also divert the time and attention of our management.



***Our management team may invest or spend the proceeds of this offering in ways with which you may not agree or in ways which may not yield a significant return.***

Our management will have broad discretion over the use of proceeds from this offering. The net proceeds from this offering will be used to fund commercialization activities for our Pure-Vu System, to continue research and development activities, including clinical and regulatory development and for the continued development and enhancement of the Pure-Vu System, and acquisitions or investments in businesses, products or technologies that are complementary to our own. We intend to use the remaining net proceeds for working capital and other general corporate purposes.

Our management will have considerable discretion in the application of the net proceeds, and you will not have the opportunity, as part of your investment decision, to assess whether the proceeds are being used appropriately. The net proceeds may be used for corporate purposes that do not increase our operating results or enhance the value of our common stock. Pending their use, we may invest the net proceeds from this offering in short-term, investment-grade, interest-bearing securities. These investments may not yield a favorable return to our stockholders. If we do not invest or apply the net proceeds from this offering in ways that enhance stockholder value, we may fail to achieve expected financial results, which could cause our stock price to decline.

***The trading price of our common stock recently increased significantly to a level that we do not believe was consistent with any recent change in our financial condition or results of operations. If the trading price of our common shares decreases rapidly, investors purchasing our common shares in this offering could lose a significant portion of their investment.***

The trading price of our common stock has recently increased significantly. On December 31, 2020, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$0.948 per share; on February 18, 2021, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$2.46 per share; and on March 15, 2021, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market was \$1.60 per share. We believe that the sharp increase in the trading price of our common shares is the result of a number of factors outside our control, potentially including social media posts that may have drawn attention to our company and increased trading in our common stock by retail investors. These social media posts were not sponsored or endorsed by us. There has been no recent change in our financial condition or results of operations that is consistent with the increase in the trading price of our common stock. The recent increase in the trading price of our common stock may not be sustained. In the event of a rapid decrease in the trading price of our common stock, investors purchasing our common stock in this offering could lose a significant portion of their investment.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus contain, and our officers and representatives may from time to time make, “forward-looking statements,” which include information relating to future events, future financial performance, financial projections, strategies, expectations, competitive environment and regulation. Words such as “may,” “should,” “could,” “would,” “predicts,” “potential,” “continue,” “expects,” “anticipates,” “future,” “intends,” “plans,” “believes,” “estimates,” “goal,” “seek,” “project,” “strategy,” “likely,” and similar expressions, as well as statements in future tense, identify forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements are neither historical facts, nor should they be read as a guarantee of future performance or results and may not be accurate indications of when such performance or results will be achieved. Forward-looking statements are based on information we have when those statements are made or management’s good faith belief as of that time with respect to future events, and are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual performance or results to differ materially from those expressed in or suggested by the forward-looking statements. Important factors that could cause such differences include, but are not limited to:

- our limited operating history;
- our history of operating losses in each year since inception and expectation that we will continue to incur operating losses for the foreseeable future;
- our current and future capital requirements to support our development and commercialization efforts for the Pure-Vu System and our ability to satisfy our capital needs;
- our dependence on the Pure-Vu System, our sole product;
- our ability to obtain approval from regulatory agents in different jurisdictions for the Pure-Vu System;
- our Pure-Vu System and the procedure to cleanse the colon in preparation for colonoscopy are not currently separately reimbursable through private or governmental third-party payors;
- our lack of a developed sales and marketing organization and our ability to commercialize the Pure-Vu System;
- our dependence on third-parties to manufacture the Pure-Vu System;
- our ability to maintain or protect the validity of our patents and other intellectual property;
- our ability to retain key executives and medical and science personnel;
- our ability to internally develop new inventions and intellectual property;
- interpretations of current laws and the passages of future laws;
- acceptance of our business model by investors;
- the accuracy of our estimates regarding expenses and capital requirements;
- our ability to adequately support growth; and
- our ability to project in the short term the hospital medical device environment considering the global pandemic and strains on hospital systems.

The foregoing does not represent an exhaustive list of matters that may be covered by the forward-looking statements contained herein and in the documents incorporated by reference herein or risk factors that we are faced with that may cause our actual results to differ from those anticipated in our forward-looking statements. Factors that may affect our results include, but are not limited to, the risks and uncertainties discussed in the “Risk Factors” section on page 3 of this prospectus, in our Annual Report on Form 10-K or in other reports we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Moreover, new risks regularly emerge and it is not possible for our management to predict or articulate all risks we face, nor can we assess the impact of all risks on our business or the extent to which any risk, or combination of risks, may cause actual results to differ from those contained in any forward-looking statements. The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, do not protect any forward-looking statements that we make in connection with this offering. All forward-looking statements included in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus are based on information available to us on the date of this prospectus or the date of the applicable document incorporated by reference. Except to the extent required by applicable laws or rules, we undertake no obligation, and expressly disclaim any obligation, to publicly update or revise or correct any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, that may be made from time to time, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. All subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us or persons acting on our behalf are expressly qualified in their entirety by the cautionary statements contained above and throughout this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We qualify all of our forward-looking statements by these cautionary statements.

You should rely only on the information in this prospectus. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely upon it.

We may not actually achieve the plans, intentions or expectations disclosed in our forward-looking statements, and you should not place undue reliance on our forward-looking statements. Actual results or events could differ materially from the plans, intentions and expectations disclosed in the forward-looking statements we make. We have included important factors in the cautionary statements included in this prospectus and the information incorporated herein, particularly in “Risk Factors,” that could cause actual results or events to differ materially from the forward-looking statements that we make. Our forward-looking statements do not reflect the potential impact of any future acquisitions, mergers, dispositions, joint ventures or investments that we may make.

You should read this prospectus, the documents that we incorporate by reference into this prospectus, including our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and any subsequent updates described in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, and the documents that we have filed as exhibits to our filings with the SEC completely and with the understanding that our actual future results may be materially different from what we expect. We do not assume any obligation to update any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as required by law.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

We intend to use the net proceeds from this offering to fund commercialization activities for our Pure-Vu System, to continue research and development activities, including clinical and regulatory development and for the continued development and enhancement of the Pure-Vu System, and acquisitions or investments in businesses, products or technologies that are complementary to our own. We intend to use the remaining net proceeds for working capital and other general corporate purposes. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to close this offering, the actual total public offering amount, commissions and proceeds to us, if any, are not determinable at this time. There can be no assurance that we will sell any shares under or fully utilize the sales agreement with the Agent as a source of financing.

The amount and timing of our use of the net proceeds from any offerings hereunder will depend upon a number of factors, including our development efforts and other factors described under "Risk Factors" in this prospectus, the accompanying base prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein, as well as the amount of cash used in our operations. As of the date of this prospectus supplement, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to us from this offering. Accordingly, our management will have broad discretion in the timing and application of these proceeds. Pending application of the net proceeds as described above, we intend to temporarily invest the proceeds in short-term, interest-bearing instruments.

## DIVIDEND POLICY

We historically have not, and do not anticipate in the future, paying dividends on our common stock. We currently intend to retain all of our future earnings, as applicable, to finance the growth and development of our business. We are not subject to any legal restrictions respecting the payment of dividends, except that we may not pay dividends if the payment would render us insolvent. Subject to these limitations, any future determination as to the payment of cash dividends on our common stock will be at our board of directors' discretion and will depend on our financial condition, operating results, capital requirements and other factors that our board of directors considers to be relevant.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our common stock in this offering, your ownership interest will be immediately diluted to the extent of the difference between the price per share you pay in this offering and the as adjusted net tangible book value per share of our common stock immediately after this offering.

Our historical net tangible book value is the amount of our total tangible assets less our total liabilities. Net historical tangible book value per share is our historical net tangible book value divided by the number of shares of common stock outstanding as of December 31, 2020. Our historical net tangible book value as of December 31, 2020 was \$11.3 million, or \$0.35 per share of common stock.

As adjusted net book value is our net tangible book value, plus the effect of the sale of \$25.0 million of our shares of common stock in this offering at the assumed offering price of \$1.39 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market on March 10, 2021) and after deducting offering commissions and estimated expenses payable by us. Our as adjusted net book value as of December 31, 2020 would have been approximately \$35.4 million, or \$0.70 per share. This amount represents an immediate increase in as adjusted net tangible book value of \$0.35 per share to our existing stockholders, and an immediate dilution of \$0.69 per share to new investors participating in this offering. Dilution per share to new investors is determined by subtracting as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering from the public offering price per share paid by new investors.

The following table illustrates this dilution on a per share basis:

Assumed offering price per share		\$	1.39
Historical net tangible book value per share as of December 31, 2020	\$	0.35	
Increase in net tangible book value per share as of December 31, 2020, attributable to new investors	\$	<u>0.35</u>	
As adjusted net tangible book value per share, after giving effect to this offering		\$	<u>0.70</u>
Dilution of as adjusted net tangible book value per share to new investors		\$	<u>0.69</u>

The table above assumes for illustrative purposes that an aggregate of 17,985,612 shares are sold during the term of the equity distribution agreement with the Agent at a price of \$1.39 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market on March 10, 2021, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$25 million. The shares subject to the equity distribution agreement with the Agent are being sold from time to time at various prices. This information is supplied for illustrative purposes only and may differ based on the actual offering price and the actual number of shares offered.

The above discussion and table are based on 32,272,309 shares of common stock outstanding on December 31, 2020 and excludes:

- 5,029,119 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding stock options issued under our 2016 Equity Incentive Plan as of December 31, 2020, with a weighted average exercise price of \$3.00 per share;
- 337,925 shares of our common stock subject to outstanding restricted stock units issued under our 2016 Equity Incentive Plan as of December 31, 2020;
- 387 additional shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under our 2016 Equity Incentive Plan as of December 31, 2020;
- 17,058,051 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$1.86 per share as of December 31, 2020; and
- any future automatic increases in the number of shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under our 2016 Equity Incentive Plan.

To the extent that options or warrants are exercised, new options are issued under our 2016 Equity Incentive Plan, or we issue additional shares of common stock in the future, there may be further dilution to investors participating in this offering. In addition, we may choose to raise additional capital because of market conditions or strategic considerations, even if we believe that we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans. If we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the issuance of these securities could result in further dilution to our stockholders.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We have entered into an equity distribution agreement, or sales agreement, with Oppenheimer & Co. Inc. (“the Agent”), under which we may, over a period of time and from time to time, offer and sell shares of our common stock having an aggregate sales price of up to \$25.0 million through the Agent, or to the Agent. Sales of our common stock through the Agent, if any, will be made by means of ordinary brokers’ transactions on The Nasdaq Capital Market or otherwise at market prices prevailing at the time of sale or at prices related to such prevailing market prices or as otherwise agreed upon by us. The Agent has advised us that it will not engage in any transactions that stabilize the price of our common stock.

The Agent will use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell the common stock offered hereby, from time to time, based upon instructions in a placement notice from us (including any price, time or size limits or other parameters or conditions we may impose). The Agent’s obligations under the sales agreement to sell our common stock are subject to a number of conditions that we must meet. We or the Agent may suspend the offering of common stock upon proper notice and subject to other conditions.

The Agent has agreed to provide written confirmation of any sales to us no later than the opening of the trading day on The Nasdaq Capital Market following the trading day on which shares of common stock were sold under the sales agreement. Each confirmation will include the number of shares sold on the preceding day, the net proceeds to us and the compensation payable by us to the Agent in connection with the sales.

We will pay the Agent commissions for its services in acting as agent in the sale of common stock offered hereby. Under the sales agreement, the Agent will be entitled to compensation of 3.0% of the gross sales price of all shares sold through it as our agent. However, in no event will the total compensation of the Agent, when combined with the reimbursement of the Agent for the out-of-pocket fees and disbursements of its legal counsel as described below, exceed 8.0% of the gross proceeds received from the sale of our common stock. Also, we have agreed to reimburse the Agent for the out-of-pocket reasonable fees and disbursements of its legal counsel, in an amount not to exceed \$50,000. The Agent has agreed our obligation to reimburse the Agent for any costs and expenses incurred by the Agent on an ongoing basis during the term of this Agreement will be limited to a maximum of \$3,000 per fiscal quarter.

We estimate that the total expenses for the offering, excluding compensation and reimbursement payable to the Agent under the terms of the sales agreement, will be approximately \$75,000.

If we sell common stock to the Agent, acting as a principal, we will set forth the terms of such transactions in the applicable placement notice and, to the extent required by applicable law, we will describe these terms in a separate prospectus supplement or pricing supplement.

Settlement of sales of common stock will occur on the second trading day following the date on which any sales are made, or on some other date that is agreed upon by us and the Agent in connection with a particular transaction, in return for payment of the net proceeds to us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in any escrow, trust or similar arrangement. Sales of common stock in this offering, if any, as contemplated by this prospectus will be settled through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company or by such other means as we and the Agent may agree upon.

We will report at least quarterly the number of shares of common stock sold through or to the Agent under the sales agreement, the net proceeds to us and the compensation paid by us to the Agent in connection with the sales, if any.

From time to time, the Agent and its affiliates have provided, and may in the future provide, various investment banking and advisory services for us for which they may in the future receive customary fees and expenses. The Agent and its affiliates may, from time to time, engage in other transactions with and perform services for us in the ordinary course of their business. In the course of their businesses, the Agent and its affiliates may actively trade our securities or loans for their own account or for the accounts of customers, and, accordingly, the Agent and its affiliates may at any time hold long or short positions in such securities or loans.

In connection with the sale of our common stock in this offering, the Agent will be deemed to be an “underwriter” within the meaning of the Securities Act and the compensation paid to the Agent will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to the Agent against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

The offering of shares of our common stock pursuant to the sales agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the sale of all common stock subject to the sales agreement or (2) termination of the sales agreement. The sales agreement may be terminated by us at any time upon five (5) days’ prior written notice, by the Agent at any time on the close of business on the date of receipt of written notice, and by the Agent at any time in certain circumstances, including any suspension or limitation on the trading of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market, as further described in the sales agreement.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the common stock offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Lowenstein Sandler LLP, New York, New York. Goodwin Procter LLP, New York, New York, is acting as counsel to the Agent in connection with this offering.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated balance sheets of Motus GI Holdings, Inc. and Subsidiaries as of December 31, 2020 and 2019, and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive loss, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years then ended have been audited by EisnerAmper LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report which is incorporated herein by reference, which report includes an explanatory paragraph about the existence of substantial doubt concerning the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Such consolidated financial statements have been incorporated herein by reference in reliance on the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities Act with respect to the securities offered by this prospectus. This prospectus, which is part of the registration statement, omits certain information, exhibits, schedules and undertakings set forth in the registration statement. For further information pertaining to us and our securities, reference is made to our SEC filings and the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents or provisions of any documents referred to in this prospectus are not necessarily complete, and in each instance where a copy of the document has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement, reference is made to the exhibit for a more complete description of the matters involved.

In addition, registration statements and certain other filings made with the SEC electronically are publicly available through the SEC's web site at <http://www.sec.gov>. The registration statement, including all exhibits and amendments to the registration statement, has been filed electronically with the SEC.

We are subject to the information and periodic reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and, in accordance with such requirements, will file periodic reports, proxy statements, and other information with the SEC. These periodic reports, proxy statements, and other information will be available for inspection and copying at the web site of the SEC referred to above. We also maintain a website at <http://www.motusgi.com>, at which you may access these materials free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after they are electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of, and is not incorporated into, this prospectus. We have included our website address in this prospectus solely as an inactive textual reference.

You should rely only on the information in this prospectus and the additional information described above and under the heading "Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference" below. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely upon it. We are not making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information in this prospectus was accurate on the date of the front cover of this prospectus only. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.



## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to “incorporate by reference” information that we file with it into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be a part of this prospectus, and information that we file later with the SEC will automatically update and supersede information contained in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement.

We incorporate by reference the documents listed below that we have previously filed with the SEC:

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2020, filed with the SEC on March 16, 2021;
- our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on [January 20, 2021](#) and [January 27, 2021](#) (other than information “furnished” under Items 2.02 or 7.01, or corresponding information furnished under Item 9.01 or included as an exhibit); and
- the description of our common stock contained in our Registration Statement on [Form 8-A](#), filed on February 6, 2018, including any amendments thereto or reports filed for the purposes of updating this description, including the Description of Securities filed as Exhibit 4.15 to our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2020.

All reports and other documents that we file with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the date of this prospectus but prior to the termination of the offering of the securities hereunder will also be considered to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus from the date of the filing of these reports and documents, and will supersede the information herein; *provided, however*, that all reports, exhibits and other information that we “furnish” to the SEC will not be considered incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Any statement contained in a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement shall be deemed to be modified or superseded to the extent that a statement contained herein, therein or in any other subsequently filed document that also is incorporated by reference herein or therein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus or any prospectus supplement.

We will provide you without charge, upon your oral or written request, with a copy of any or all reports, proxy statements and other documents we file with the SEC, as well as any or all of the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus or the registration statement (other than exhibits to such documents unless such exhibits are specifically incorporated by reference into such documents). Requests for such copies should be directed to Motus GI Holdings, Inc., Attn: Chief Financial Officer, 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301. You may also direct any requests for documents to us by telephone at (954) 541-8000 or e-mail at [IR@MotusGI.com](mailto:IR@MotusGI.com).



Up to \$25,000,000

Common Stock

---

PROSPECTUS

---

**Oppenheimer & Co.**

, 2021

---

---

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution**

The following table sets forth the costs and expenses payable by us in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities being registered. All amounts are estimates except the SEC registration fee and FINRA fee (which have previously been paid).

SEC Registration Fee	\$ 10,910.00
FINRA fee	15,500.00
Legal Fees and Expenses	*
Accounting Fees and Expenses	*
Trustee Fees	*
Printing and Engraving	*
Miscellaneous	*
<b>Total:</b>	<b>\$ *</b>

\* Estimated fees and expenses are not presently known.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the "DGCL") provides, in general, that a corporation incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware, as we are, may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding (other than a derivative action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if such person acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe such person's conduct was unlawful. In the case of a derivative action, a Delaware corporation may indemnify any such person against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if such person acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, except that no indemnification will be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person will have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware or any other court in which such action was brought determines such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that we will indemnify our directors, officers, employees and agents to the extent and in the manner permitted by the provisions of the DGCL, as amended from time to time, subject to any permissible expansion or limitation of such indemnification, as may be set forth in any amendment by stockholders or directors resolution.

Any repeal or modification of these provisions approved by our stockholders will be prospective only and will not adversely affect any limitation on the liability of any of our directors or officers existing as of the time of such repeal or modification.

We have director and officer liability insurance to cover liabilities our directors and officers may incur in connection with their services to us, including matters arising under the Securities Act.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with all of our directors and named executive officers whereby we have agreed to indemnify those directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by law, including indemnification against expenses and liabilities incurred in legal proceedings to which the director or officer was, or is threatened to be made, a party by reason of the fact that such director or officer is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of Motus GI Holdings, Inc. (the "Company"), provided that such director or officer acted in good faith and in a manner that the director or officer reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the Company.

**Item 16. Exhibits**

Exhibit No.	Description
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement.**
1.2	<a href="#">Equity Distribution Agreement, dated March 16, 2021, by and between the Registrant and Oppenheimer &amp; Co. Inc.*</a>
4.1	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Certificate (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to our Registration Statement on Form S-1 filed with the SEC on January 5, 2018).</a>
4.2	Specimen Preferred Stock Certificate.**
4.3	Form of Warrant Agreement.**
4.4	Form of Warrant Certificate.**
4.5	<a href="#">Form of Senior Debt Indenture.-*</a>
4.6	<a href="#">Form of Subordinated Debt Indenture.*</a>
4.7	<a href="#">Form of Senior Note (included in Exhibit 4.5).**</a>
4.8	<a href="#">Form of Subordinated Note (included in Exhibit 4.6).**</a>
4.9	Form of Unit Agreement.**
4.10	Form of Subscription Agreement.**
5.1	<a href="#">Legal opinion of Lowenstein Sandler LLP.*</a>
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of EisnerAmper LLP.*</a>
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Lowenstein Sandler LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).*</a>
24.1	<a href="#">Power of Attorney (included on the signature page).*</a>
25.1	Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 of the Trustee for the Senior Debt Indenture.***
25.2	Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 of the Trustee for the Subordinated Debt Indenture.***

\* Filed herewith.

\*\* To be filed, if applicable, by amendment or by a report filed under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and incorporated herein by reference.

\*\*\* To be filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

## Item 17. Undertakings

The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this Registration Statement:

(a) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933.

(b) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the Registration Statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement.

(c) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the Registration Statement or any material change to such information in the Registration Statement.

Provided, however, that paragraphs (1)(a), (1)(b) and (1)(c) above do not apply if the registration statement is on Form S-3 and the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(a) If the Registrant is relying on Rule 430B:

(i) Each prospectus filed by the Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the Registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the Registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the Registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the Registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (a) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the Registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
- (b) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the Registrant or used or referred to by the Registrant;
- (c) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about Registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the Registrant; and
- (d) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the Registrant to the purchaser.

(6) The Registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the Registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(7) The undersigned hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under Section 305(b)(2) of the Act.

(8) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Registrant pursuant to the forgoing provisions, or otherwise, the Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the Registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Ft. Lauderdale, State of Florida on March 16, 2021.

### MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.

By: /s/ Timothy P. Moran  
Timothy P. Moran  
Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)

**KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS**, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Timothy P. Moran and Andrew Taylor, and each of them, each with full power to act without the other, his true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, each with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for such person and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any amendments to this Registration Statement, and to sign any registration statement for the same offering covered by this Registration Statement, including post-effective amendments or registration statements filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming that each of said such attorneys-in-fact and agents or his substitute or substitutes, may do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Timothy P. Moran</u> Timothy P. Moran	Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Andrew Taylor</u> Andrew Taylor	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ David Hochman</u> David Hochman	Chairman of the Board	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Mark Pomeranz</u> Mark Pomeranz	President, Chief Operating Officer and Director	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Darren Sherman</u> Darren Sherman	Director	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Samuel Nussbaum</u> Samuel Nussbaum	Director	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Shervin Korangy</u> Shervin Korangy	Director	March 16, 2021
<u>/s/ Gary Pruden</u> Gary Pruden	Director	March 16, 2021

**MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.**  
**EQUITY DISTRIBUTION AGREEMENT**

March 16, 2021

OPPENHEIMER & CO. INC.  
 85 Broad Street  
 New York, New York 10004

Ladies and Gentlemen:

As further set forth in this agreement (this “**Agreement**”), Motus GI Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), proposes to issue and sell from time to time through Oppenheimer & Co. Inc. (the “**Agent**”), as sales agent, the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”) (such shares of Common Stock to be sold pursuant to this Agreement, the “**Shares**”) on terms set forth herein. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the parties hereto agree that compliance with the limitation set forth in Section 2 of this Agreement on the number of shares of Shares issued and sold under this Agreement shall be the sole responsibility of the Company, and the Agent shall have no obligation in connection with such compliance.

The Company hereby confirms its agreement with the Agent with respect to the sale of the Shares.

**1. Representations and Warranties of the Company.**

(a) The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with, the Agent that as of the date of this Agreement, each Representation Date, each date on which a Placement Notice (as defined in Section 2(a)(i) below) is given, and any date on which Shares are sold hereunder as follows:

(i) *Registration Statement and Prospectus.* The Company has filed or will file, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the “**Securities Act**”), with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement on Form S-3, including a base prospectus, relating to certain securities, including the Common Stock, to be issued from time to time by the Company, and which incorporates by reference documents that the Company has filed or will file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the “**Exchange Act**”). The Company has prepared a prospectus supplement to the base prospectus included as part of such registration statement specifically relating to the Shares (the “**Prospectus Supplement**”). Following the date that such registration statement is declared effective, the Company will furnish to the Agent, for use by Agent, copies of the prospectus included as part of such registration statement, as supplemented by the Prospectus Supplement, relating to the Shares. Except where the context otherwise requires, such registration statement, as amended when it becomes effective (the “**Effective Time**”), including all documents filed as part thereof or incorporated by reference therein, and including any information contained in a Prospectus (as defined below) subsequently filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act or deemed to be a part of such registration statement pursuant to Rule 430B or 462(b) of the Securities Act (a “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**”), is herein called the “**Registration Statement**.” The base prospectus, including all documents incorporated therein by reference, included in the Registration Statement, as it may be supplemented by the Prospectus Supplement, in the form in which such prospectus and/or Prospectus Supplement have most recently been filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, together with any “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433 of the Securities Act regulations (“**Rule 433**”), relating to the Shares, if any, that (i) is required to be filed with the Commission by the Company or (ii) is exempt from filing pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i), in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g), is herein called the “**Prospectus**.” Any reference herein to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to refer to and include the documents incorporated by reference therein, and any reference herein to the terms “amend,” “amendment” or “supplement” with respect to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the filing after the execution hereof of any document with the Commission deemed to be incorporated by reference therein. For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or to any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to include any copy filed with the Commission pursuant the Electronic Data Gathering Analysis and Retrieval System (“**EDGAR**”).

(ii) *Continuing Effectiveness of Registration Statement.* The Company has complied or will comply, to the Commission’s satisfaction, with all requests of the Commission for additional or supplemental information. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement is in effect and no proceedings for such purpose have been instituted or are pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, contemplated or threatened by the Commission. The Company meets the requirements for use of Form S-3 under the Securities Act. The sale of the Shares hereunder meets the requirements of General Instruction I.B.1./I.B.6 of Form S-3.

(iii) *No Material Misstatements or Omissions.* The Prospectus when filed complied, and as amended or supplemented, if applicable, will comply in all material respects with the Securities Act. Each of the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, the Prospectus and any post-effective amendments or supplements thereto, at the time it became effective or its date, as applicable, and as of each Settlement Date (as defined in Section 2(a)(vii) below), complied in all material respects with the Securities Act, and as of each effective date and each Settlement Date, did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus, as amended or supplemented, as of its date, did not and, as of each of the Settlement Date, will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The representations and warranties set forth in the two immediately preceding sentences do not apply to statements in or omissions from the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, or any post-effective amendment thereto, or the Prospectus, or any amendments or supplements thereto, made in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to the Agent furnished to the Company in writing by the Agent expressly for use therein.

(iv) *Eligible Issuer.* The Company is not an “ineligible issuer” (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) as of the eligibility determination date for purposes of Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act with respect to the offering of the Shares contemplated by the Registration Statement; the parties hereto agree and understand that the content of any and all “road shows” (as defined in Rule 433 under the Securities Act) related to the offering of the Shares contemplated hereby is solely the property of the Company.

(v) *Emerging Growth Company.* From the time of initial filing of the Registration Statement to the Commission through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an “**emerging growth company**,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act.



(vi) *Financial Statements.* The financial statements of the Company, together with the related notes, set forth in, or incorporated by reference into, the Registration Statement and Prospectus comply in all material respects with the requirements of the Act and fairly present the financial condition of the Company and its consolidated subsidiaries as of the dates indicated and the results of operations and changes in cash flows for the periods therein specified in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States consistently applied throughout the periods involved; the supporting schedules included in, or incorporated by reference into, the Registration Statement present fairly the information required to be stated therein; any non-GAAP financial information included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus complies with the requirements of Regulation G and Item 10 of Regulation S-K under the Act; and, except as disclosed in the Prospectus, there are no material off-balance sheet arrangements (as defined in Regulation S-K under the Act, Item 303(a)(4)(ii)) or any other relationships with unconsolidated entities or other persons, that may have a material current or, to the Company's knowledge, material future effect on the Company's financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources or significant components of revenue or expenses. No other financial statements or schedules are required to be included in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus. EisnerAmper LLP, which has expressed its opinion with respect to, and/or reviewed the financial statements and schedules filed as, or incorporated by reference into, a part of the Registration Statement and included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, is (x) an independent public accounting firm within the meaning of the Act and the Rules and Regulations, (y) a registered public accounting firm (as defined in Section 2(a)(12) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the "*Sarbanes-Oxley Act*")) and (z) not in violation of the auditor independence requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

(vii) *Organization and Good Standing.* Each of the Company and its subsidiaries has been duly organized and is validly existing as a corporation and (to the extent such concept is recognized under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation) in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation or formation. Each of the Company and its subsidiaries has full corporate power and authority to own its properties and conduct its business as currently being carried on and as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, and is duly qualified to do business as a foreign corporation (to the extent such concept is recognized under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation) in good standing in each jurisdiction in which it owns or leases real property or in which the conduct of its business makes such qualification necessary and in which the failure to so qualify would have a material adverse effect upon the business, prospects, management, properties, operations, condition (financial or otherwise) or results of operations of the Company and its subsidiaries, taken as a whole ("*Material Adverse Effect*").

(viii) *Absence of Certain Events.* Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, subsequent to the date of this Agreement, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock; and there has not been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants or conversion of convertible securities), or any material change in the short-term or long-term debt (other than as a result of the conversion of convertible securities), or any issuance of options, warrants, convertible securities or other rights to purchase the capital stock, of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, or any material adverse change in the general affairs, condition (financial or otherwise), business, prospects, management, properties, operations or results of operations of the Company and its subsidiaries, taken as a whole ("*Material Adverse Change*") or any development which could reasonably be expected to result in any Material Adverse Change.

---

3

(ix) *Absence of Proceedings.* Except as set forth in the Prospectus, there is not pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened or contemplated, any action, suit or proceeding (a) to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or (b) which has as the subject thereof any officer or director of the Company or any subsidiary, any employee benefit plan sponsored by the Company or any subsidiary or any property or assets owned or leased by the Company or any subsidiary before or by any court or Governmental Authority (as defined below), or any arbitrator, which, individually or in the aggregate, might result in any Material Adverse Change, or would materially and adversely affect the ability of the Company to perform its obligations under this Agreement or which are otherwise material in the context of the sale of the Shares. There are no current or, to the knowledge of the Company, pending, legal, governmental or regulatory actions, suits or proceedings (x) to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is subject or (y) which has as the subject thereof any officer or director of the Company or any subsidiary, any employee plan sponsored by the Company or any subsidiary or any property or assets owned or leased by the Company or any subsidiary, that are required to be described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus by the Act or by the Rules and Regulations and that have not been so described.

(x) *Authorization; No Conflicts; Authority.* This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, and constitutes a valid, legal and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable in accordance with its terms, except as rights to indemnity hereunder may be limited by federal or state securities laws and except as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally and subject to general principles of equity. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions herein contemplated will not (A) conflict with or result in a breach or violation of any of the terms or provisions of, or constitute a default under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries pursuant to any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is subject, (B) result in any violation of the provisions of the Company's charter or by-laws or (C) result in the violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule, regulation or decree of any court or arbitrator or federal, state, local or foreign governmental agency or regulatory authority having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any of their properties or assets (each, a "*Governmental Authority*"), except in the case of clauses (A) or (C) as would not result in a Material Adverse Effect. No consent, approval, authorization or order of, or registration or filing with any Governmental Authority is required for the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement or for the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby, including the issuance or sale of the Shares by the Company, except such as may be required under the Act, the rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ("*FINRA*") or state securities or blue sky laws; and the Company has full power and authority to enter into this Agreement and to consummate the transactions contemplated hereby, including the authorization, issuance and sale of the Shares as contemplated by this Agreement

---

4

(xi) *Capitalization; the Shares; Registration Rights.* All of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company, including the outstanding shares of Common Stock, are duly authorized and validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, have been issued in compliance with all federal and state and foreign securities laws, were not issued in violation of or subject to any preemptive rights or other rights to subscribe for or purchase securities that have not been waived in writing (a copy of which has been delivered to counsel to the Agent), and the holders thereof are not subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Shares which may be sold hereunder by the Company have been duly authorized and, when issued, delivered and paid for in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, will have been validly issued and will be fully paid and nonassessable, and the holders thereof will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; and the capital stock of the Company, including the Common Stock, conforms to the description thereof in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus. Except as otherwise stated in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, (A) there are no preemptive rights or other rights to subscribe for or to purchase, or any restriction upon the voting or transfer of, any shares of Common Stock pursuant to the Company's charter, by-laws or any agreement or other instrument to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is bound and (B) neither the filing of the Registration Statement nor the offering or sale of the Shares as contemplated by this Agreement gives rise to any rights for or relating to the registration of any shares of Common Stock or other securities of the Company (collectively "*Registration Rights*"). All of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of each of the Company's subsidiaries have been duly and validly authorized and issued and are fully paid and nonassessable, and, except as otherwise described in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, the Company owns of record and beneficially, free and clear of any security interests, claims, liens, proxies, equities or other encumbrances, all of the issued and outstanding shares of such stock. The Company has an authorized and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration

Statement and in the Prospectus. The Common Stock (including the Shares) conforms in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Prospectus.

(xii) *Stock Options.* Except as described in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, there are no options, warrants, agreements, contracts or other rights in existence to purchase or acquire from the Company or any subsidiary of the Company any shares of the capital stock of the Company or any subsidiary of the Company. The description of the Company's stock option, stock bonus and other stock plans or arrangements (the "*Company Stock Plans*"), and the options (the "*Options*") or other rights granted thereunder, set forth in the Prospectus accurately and fairly presents the information required to be shown with respect to such plans, arrangements, options and rights. Each grant of an Option (A) was duly authorized no later than the date on which the grant of such Option was by its terms to be effective by all necessary corporate action, including, as applicable, approval by the board of directors of the Company (or a duly constituted and authorized committee thereof) and any required stockholder approval by the necessary number of votes or written consents, and the award agreement governing such grant (if any) was duly executed and delivered by each party thereto and (B) was made in accordance with the terms of the applicable Company Stock Plan, and all applicable laws and regulatory rules or requirements, including all applicable federal securities laws.

(xiii) *Compliance with Laws.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries holds, and is operating in compliance in all material respects with, all franchises, grants, authorizations, licenses, permits, easements, consents, certificates and orders of any Governmental Authority or self-regulatory body required for the conduct of its business and all such franchises, grants, authorizations, licenses, permits, easements, consents, certifications and orders are valid and in full force and effect; and neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received notice of any revocation or modification of any such franchise, grant, authorization, license, permit, easement, consent, certification or order or has reason to believe that any such franchise, grant, authorization, license, permit, easement, consent, certification or order will not be renewed in the ordinary course; and the Company and each of its subsidiaries is in compliance in all material respects with all applicable federal, state, local and foreign laws, regulations, orders and decrees.

---

5

(xiv) *Ownership of Assets.* The Company and its subsidiaries have good and marketable title to all property (whether real or personal) described in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus as being owned by them, in each case free and clear of all liens, claims, security interests, other encumbrances or defects except such as are described in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus or except as would not have a Material Adverse Effect. The property held under lease by the Company and its subsidiaries is held by them under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases with only such exceptions with respect to any particular lease as do not interfere in any material respect with the conduct of the business of the Company or its subsidiaries.

(xv) *Intellectual Property.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries owns, possesses, or can acquire on reasonable terms, all Intellectual Property (as defined below) necessary for the conduct of the Company's and its subsidiaries' business as now conducted or as described in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus to be conducted, except as such failure to own, possess, or acquire such rights would not result in a Material Adverse Effect. Furthermore, (A) to the knowledge of the Company, there is no infringement, misappropriation or violation by third parties of any such Intellectual Property owned or possessed by the Company, except as such infringement, misappropriation or violation would not result in a Material Adverse Effect; (B) there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened, action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the Company's or any of its subsidiaries' rights in or to any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such claim; (C) the Intellectual Property owned by the Company and its subsidiaries, and to the knowledge of the Company, the Intellectual Property licensed to the Company and its subsidiaries, has not been adjudged invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, and there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the validity or scope of any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such claim; (D) there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others that the Company or any of its subsidiaries infringes, misappropriates or otherwise violates any Intellectual Property or other proprietary rights of others, neither the Company or any of its subsidiaries has received any written notice of such claim and the Company is unaware of any other fact which would form a reasonable basis for any such claim; and (E) to the Company's knowledge, no employee of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is in or has ever been in violation of any term of any employment contract, patent disclosure agreement, invention assignment agreement, non-competition agreement, non-solicitation agreement, nondisclosure agreement or any restrictive covenant to or with a former employer where the basis of such violation relates to such employee's employment with the Company or any of its subsidiaries or actions undertaken by the employee while employed with the Company or any of its subsidiaries, except as such violation would not result in a Material Adverse Effect. "*Intellectual Property*" shall mean all patents, patent applications, trade and service marks, trade and service mark registrations, trade names, copyrights, licenses, inventions, trade secrets, domain names, technology, know-how and other intellectual property.

---

6

(xvi) *No Violations or Defaults.* Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of its respective charter, by-laws or other organizational documents, or, except as would not result in a Material Adverse Effect, in breach of or otherwise in default, and no event has occurred which, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default in the performance of any material obligation, agreement or condition contained in any bond, debenture, note, indenture, loan agreement or any other material contract, lease or other instrument to which it is subject or by which any of them may be bound, or to which any of the material property or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is subject.

(xvii) *Taxes.* The Company and its subsidiaries have timely filed all federal, state, local and foreign income and franchise tax returns required to be filed and are not in default in the payment of any taxes which were payable pursuant to said returns or any assessments with respect thereto, other than any which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is contesting in good faith. Except as would not result in a Material Adverse Effect, there is no pending dispute with any taxing authority relating to any of such returns, and the Company has no knowledge of any proposed liability for any tax to be imposed upon the properties or assets of the Company or any of its subsidiaries for which there is not an adequate reserve reflected in the Company's financial statements included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus.

(xviii) *Exchange Listing.* The Shares have been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market. Except as previously disclosed to counsel for the Agent or as set forth in the Prospectus, there are no affiliations with members of FINRA among the Company's officers or directors or, to the knowledge of the Company, any five percent or greater stockholders of the Company or any beneficial owner of the Company's unregistered equity securities that were acquired during the 180-day period immediately preceding the initial filing date of the Registration Statement.

(xix) *Ownership of Other Entities.* Other than the subsidiaries of the Company listed in Exhibit 21 to the Company's most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, the Company, directly or indirectly, owns no capital stock or other equity or ownership or proprietary interest in any corporation, partnership, association, trust or other entity.

(xx) *Internal Controls.* The Company and its subsidiaries maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States and to maintain accountability for assets; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, the

Company's internal control over financial reporting is effective and none of the Company, its board of directors and audit committee is aware of any "significant deficiencies" or "material weaknesses" (each as defined by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board) in its internal control over financial reporting, or any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees of the Company or its subsidiaries who have a significant role in the Company's internal controls; and since the end of the latest audited fiscal year, there has been no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (whether or not remediated) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially adversely affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting. The Company's board of directors has, subject to the exceptions, cure periods and the phase-in periods specified in the applicable stock exchange rules ("**Exchange Rules**"), validly appointed an audit committee to oversee internal accounting controls whose composition satisfies the applicable requirements of the Exchange Rules and the Company's board of directors and/or the audit committee has adopted a charter that satisfies the requirements of the Exchange Rules.

---

7

(xxi) *No Brokers or Finders.* Other than as contemplated by this Agreement, the Company has not incurred and will not incur any liability for any finder's or broker's fee or agent's commission in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

(xxii) *Insurance.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries carries, or is covered by, insurance from reputable insurers in such amounts and covering such risks as is customary for the conduct of its business and the value of its properties and the properties of its subsidiaries and as is customary for companies engaged in similar businesses in similar industries; all policies of insurance and any fidelity or surety bonds insuring the Company or any of its subsidiaries or its business, assets, employees, officers and directors are in full force and effect; the Company and its subsidiaries are in compliance with the terms of such policies and instruments in all material respects; there are no claims by the Company or any of its subsidiaries under any such policy or instrument as to which any insurance company is denying liability or defending under a reservation of rights clause; neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has been refused any insurance coverage sought or applied for; and neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has reason to believe that it will not be able to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxiii) *Investment Company Act.* The Company is not and, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Shares, will not be an "investment company," as such term is defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

(xxiv) *Sarbanes-Oxley Act.* The Company is in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder in all material respects.

---

8

(xxv) *Disclosure Controls.* The Company has established and maintains disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**")) and such controls and procedures are effective in ensuring that material information relating to the Company, including its subsidiaries, is made known to the principal executive officer and the principal financial officer. The Company has utilized such controls and procedures in preparing and evaluating the disclosures in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus.

(xxvi) *Anti-Bribery and Anti-Money Laundering Laws.* Each of the Company, its subsidiaries, its affiliates and any of their respective officers, directors, supervisors, managers, agents, or employees, has not violated, its participation in the offering will not violate, and the Company and each of its subsidiaries has instituted and maintains policies and procedures designed to ensure continued compliance with, each of the following laws: (A) anti-bribery laws, including but not limited to, any applicable law, rule, or regulation of any locality, including but not limited to any law, rule, or regulation promulgated to implement the OECD Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, signed December 17, 1997, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, the U.K. Bribery Act 2010, or any other law, rule or regulation of similar purposes and scope or (B) anti-money laundering laws, including but not limited to, applicable federal, state, international, foreign or other laws, regulations or government guidance regarding anti-money laundering, including, without limitation, Title 18 U.S. Code Section 1956 and 1957, the Patriot Act, the Bank Secrecy Act, and international anti-money laundering principles or procedures by an intergovernmental group or organization, such as the Financial Action Task Force on Money Laundering, of which the United States is a member and with which designation the United States representative to the group or organization continues to concur, all as amended, and any Executive order, directive, or regulation pursuant to the authority of any of the foregoing, or any orders or licenses issued thereunder.

(xxvii) *OFAC.*

(A) Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries, nor any of their directors, officers or employees, nor, to the Company's knowledge, any agent, affiliate or representative of the Company or its subsidiaries, is an individual or entity that is, or is owned or controlled by an individual or entity that is:

(1) the subject of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. Department of Treasury's Office of Foreign Assets Control, the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty's Treasury, or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, "**Sanctions**"), nor

---

9

(2) located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions (including, without limitation, the Crimea region of Ukraine, Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan and Syria).

(B) Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries will, directly or indirectly, use the proceeds of the offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, joint venture partner or other individual or entity:

(1) to fund or facilitate any activities or business of or with any individual or entity or in any country or territory that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject of Sanctions; or

(2) in any other manner that will result in a violation of Sanctions by any individual or entity (including any individual or entity participating in the offering, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise).

(xxviii) *Compliance with Environmental Laws.* Except as disclosed in the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation

of any statute, any rule, regulation, decision or order of any Governmental Authority or any court, domestic or foreign, relating to the use, disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or relating to the protection or restoration of the environment or human exposure to hazardous or toxic substances (collectively, “**Environmental Laws**”), owns or operates any real property contaminated with any substance that is subject to any Environmental Laws, is liable for any off-site disposal or contamination pursuant to any Environmental Laws, or is subject to any claim relating to any Environmental Laws, which violation, contamination, liability or claim would individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect; and the Company is not aware of any pending investigation which might lead to such a claim. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries anticipates incurring any material capital expenditures relating to compliance with Environmental Laws.

(xxix) *Compliance with Occupational Laws.* The Company and each of its subsidiaries (A) is in compliance, in all material respects, with any and all applicable foreign, federal, state and local laws, rules, regulations, treaties, statutes and codes promulgated by any and all Governmental Authorities (including pursuant to the Occupational Health and Safety Act) relating to the protection of human health and safety in the workplace (“**Occupational Laws**”); (B) has received all material permits, licenses or other approvals required of it under applicable Occupational Laws to conduct its business as currently conducted; and (C) is in compliance, in all material respects, with all terms and conditions of such permit, license or approval. No action, proceeding, revocation proceeding, writ, injunction or claim is pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened against the Company or any of its subsidiaries relating to Occupational Laws, and the Company does not have knowledge of any facts, circumstances or developments relating to its operations or cost accounting practices that could reasonably be expected to form the basis for or give rise to such actions, suits, investigations or proceedings.

---

10

(xxx) *Compliance with Health Care Laws.* The Company and, to the Company’s knowledge, its directors, officers, employees, and agents (while acting in such capacity) are, and at all times prior hereto have been, in compliance with, all health care laws and regulations applicable to the Company or any of its product candidates or activities, including development and testing of medical devices, kickbacks, recordkeeping, documentation requirements, the hiring of employees (to the extent governed by health care laws), quality, safety, privacy, security, licensure, accreditation or any other aspect of developing and testing health care or medical device products (collectively, “**Health Care Laws**”), except where such noncompliance would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received any written notification, correspondence or any other written communication, including notification of any pending or threatened claim, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action from any governmental authority, including, without limitation, the United States Food and Drug Administration (“**FDA**”), the Drug Enforcement Agency (“**DEA**”), the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Office of Inspector General, of potential or actual non-compliance by, or liability of, the Company under any Health Care Laws. To the Company’s knowledge, there are no facts or circumstances that would reasonably be expected to give rise to liability of the Company under any Health Care Laws, except that would not individually or in the aggregate have a Material Adverse Effect. To the Company’s knowledge, the manufacture of Company products by or on behalf of the Company is being conducted in compliance with all Health Care Laws applicable to the Company or any of its products or activities, including, without limitation, the FDA’s current good manufacturing practice regulations at 21 C.F.R. Part 820 for medical devices or Parts 210-211 for biological products, when sold in the United States, and the respective counterparts thereof promulgated by governmental authorities in countries outside the United States. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus or as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect, during the three year period ended on December 31, 2020 and through the date hereof, the Company has not had any product or Company owned manufacturing site subject to a governmental authority (including FDA) shutdown or import or export prohibition, nor received any FDA Form 483 or other governmental authority notice of inspectional observations, “warning letters,” “untitled letters,” requests to make changes to the Company products, processes or operations, or similar correspondence or notice from the FDA or other governmental authority alleging or asserting material noncompliance with any applicable Health Care Laws. To the Company’s knowledge, neither the FDA nor any other governmental authority has threatened such action. The Company is in compliance in all material respects with all applicable regulatory post-market reporting obligations, including, without limitation, the FDA’s adverse event reporting requirements at 21 CFR Parts 310, 314, 600, and 803, and, to the extent applicable, the respective counterparts thereof promulgated by governmental authorities in countries outside the United States.

---

11

(xxxi) *Licenses and Permits.* The Company and its subsidiaries possess such valid and current certificates, authorizations or permits required by state, federal or foreign regulatory agencies or bodies to conduct their respective businesses as currently conducted and as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (“**Permits**”), except where the failure to so possess would not, singly or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of, or in default under, any of the Permits or has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of, or non-compliance with, any such certificate, authorization or permit, except for such violations or defaults that would not, singly or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any Permits which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, would reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received any written notice denying, revoking or modifying any “approved enterprise” or “benefited enterprise” or “preferred enterprise” status with respect to any of the Company’s facilities or operations.

(xxxii) *No Safety Notices.* Except as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect and except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, (i) there are no recalls, field notifications, field corrections, market withdrawals or replacements, warnings, “dear doctor” letters, investigator notices, safety alerts or other notice of action relating to an alleged lack of safety, efficacy, or regulatory compliance of the Company products (“**Safety Notices**”) during the three year period ended on December 31, 2020 and through the date hereof and, (ii) such Safety Notices, if any, were resolved or closed, and (iii) to the Company’s knowledge, there are no material complaints with respect to the Company products that are currently unresolved. There are no material Safety Notices, or, to the Company’s knowledge, material product complaints with respect to the Company products, and to the Company’s knowledge, there are no facts that would be reasonably likely to result in (i) a material Safety Notice with respect to the Company products, (ii) a material change in labeling of any of the Company’s products, or (iii) a termination or suspension of marketing or testing of any of the Company’s products, except as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxiii) *Clinical Data and Regulatory Compliance.* The clinical and pre-clinical studies and tests conducted by the Company and, to the knowledge of the Company, the clinical and pre-clinical studies conducted on behalf of or sponsored by the Company, were, and if still pending, are, being conducted in all material respects in accordance with all applicable Health Care Laws and standard medical and scientific research procedures, including, but not limited to, the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act and its applicable implementing regulations at 21 C.F.R. Parts 50, 54, 56, 58 and 312. Any descriptions of clinical, pre-clinical and other studies and tests, including any related results and regulatory status, contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus are accurate in all material respects. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and to the Company’s knowledge, there are no studies, tests or trials the result of which reasonably call into question in any material respect the clinical trial results described or referred to in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus. No 510(k) submission made by or on behalf of the Company with the FDA has been terminated or suspended by the FDA, and neither the FDA nor any applicable foreign regulatory agency has commenced, or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened to initiate, any action to place a clinical hold order on, or otherwise terminate, delay or suspend, any proposed or ongoing clinical investigation conducted or proposed to be conducted by or on behalf of the Company.

---

12

(xxxiv) *ERISA and Employee Benefits Matters.* (A) To the knowledge of the Company, no “prohibited transaction” as defined under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code and not exempt under ERISA Section 408 and the regulations and published interpretations thereunder has occurred with respect to any Employee Benefit Plan. At no time has the Company or any ERISA Affiliate maintained, sponsored, participated in, contributed to or has or had any liability or obligation in respect of any Employee Benefit Plan subject to Part 3 of Subtitle B of Title I of ERISA, Title IV of ERISA, or Section 412 of the Code or any “multiemployer plan” as defined in Section 3(37) of ERISA or any multiple employer plan for which the Company or any ERISA Affiliate has incurred or could incur liability under Section 4063 or 4064 of ERISA. No Employee Benefit Plan provides or promises, or at any time provided or promised, retiree health, life insurance, or other retiree welfare benefits except as may be required by the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended, or similar state law. Each Employee Benefit Plan is and has been operated in material compliance with its terms and all applicable laws, including but not limited to ERISA and the Code and, to the knowledge of the Company, no event has occurred (including a “reportable event” as such term is defined in Section 4043 of ERISA) and no condition exists that would subject the Company or any ERISA Affiliate to any material tax, fine, lien, penalty or liability imposed by ERISA, the Code or other applicable law. Each Employee Benefit Plan intended to be qualified under Code Section 401(a) is so qualified and has a favorable determination or opinion letter from the IRS upon which it can rely, and any such determination or opinion letter remains in effect and has not been revoked; to the knowledge of the Company, nothing has occurred since the date of any such determination or opinion letter that is reasonably likely to adversely affect such qualification; (B) with respect to each Foreign Benefit Plan, such Foreign Benefit Plan (1) if intended to qualify for special tax treatment, meets, in all material respects, the requirements for such treatment, and (2) if required to be funded, is funded to the extent required by applicable law, and with respect to all other Foreign Benefit Plans, adequate reserves therefor have been established on the accounting statements of the applicable Company or subsidiary; (C) the Company does not have any obligations under any collective bargaining agreement with any union and no organization efforts are underway with respect to Company employees. As used in this Agreement, “*Code*” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended; “*Employee Benefit Plan*” means any “employee benefit plan” within the meaning of Section 3(3) of ERISA, including, without limitation, all stock purchase, stock option, stock-based severance, employment, change-in-control, medical, disability, fringe benefit, bonus, incentive, deferred compensation, employee loan and all other employee benefit plans, agreements, programs, policies or other arrangements, whether or not subject to ERISA, under which (x) any current or former employee, director or independent contractor of the Company or its subsidiaries has any present or future right to benefits and which are contributed to, sponsored by or maintained by the Company or any of its respective subsidiaries or (y) the Company or any of its subsidiaries has had or has any present or future obligation or liability; “*ERISA*” means the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended; “*ERISA Affiliate*” means any member of the company’s controlled group as defined in Code Section 414(b), (c), (m) or (o); and “*Foreign Benefit Plan*” means any Employee Benefit Plan established, maintained or contributed to outside of the United States of America or which covers any employee working or residing outside of the United States.

---

13

(xxxv) *Business Arrangements.* Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has granted rights to develop, manufacture, produce, assemble, distribute, license, market or sell its products to any other person and is not bound by any agreement that affects the exclusive right of the Company or such subsidiary to develop, manufacture, produce, assemble, distribute, license, market or sell its products.

(xxxvi) *Labor Matters.* No labor problem or dispute with the employees of the Company or any of its subsidiaries exists or is threatened or imminent, and the Company is not aware of any existing or imminent labor disturbance by the employees of any of its or its subsidiaries’ principal suppliers, contractors or customers, that could have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxvii) *Restrictions on Subsidiary Payments to the Company.* No subsidiary of the Company is currently prohibited, directly or indirectly, from paying any dividends to the Company, from making any other distribution on such subsidiary’s capital stock, from repaying to the Company any loans or advances to such subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any of such subsidiary’s property or assets to the Company or any other subsidiary of the Company, except as described in or contemplated by the Prospectus.

(xxxviii) *Disclosure of Legal Matters.* There are no statutes, regulations, legal or governmental proceedings or contracts or other documents required to be described in the Prospectus or included as exhibits to the Registration Statement that are not described or included as required.

(xxxix) *Statistical Information.* Any third-party statistical and market-related data included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate in all material respects.

(xl) *Forward-looking Statements.* No forward-looking statement (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act) contained in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus has been made or reaffirmed without a reasonable basis or has been disclosed other than in good faith.

---

14

(xli) *Effect of Certificates.* Any certificate signed by any officer of the Company and delivered to you or to counsel for the Agent shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to the Agent as to the matters covered thereby.

(xlii) *No Integration.* The Company has not sold or issued any securities that would be integrated with the offering of the Shares contemplated by this Agreement pursuant to the Securities Act or the interpretations thereof by the Commission.

(xliii) *Absence of Stabilization or Manipulation.* The Company and its affiliates have not taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that has constituted or that could reasonably be expected to cause or result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company in connection with the offering of the Shares.

(xliv) *Offering Material.* The Company has not distributed and prior to any Settlement Date, will not distribute any offering material in connection with any Placement (as defined in Section 2(a)(i) below), other than the Prospectus, and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus to which the Agent has consented.

## 2. *Purchase, Sale and Delivery of Shares.*

(a) *At-the-Market Sales.* On the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements herein contained, but subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell through the Agent as sales agent, and the Agent agrees to use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell for and on behalf of the Company, the Shares on the following terms and conditions; *provided, however*, that any obligation of the Agent to use such commercially reasonable efforts shall be subject to the continuing accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company herein, the performance by the Company of its covenants and obligations hereunder and the continuing satisfaction of the additional conditions specified in Section 4 of this Agreement. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) there can be no assurance that the Agent will be successful in selling Shares, and (ii) the Agent will incur no liability or obligation to the Company or any other person or entity if it does not sell Shares for any reason other than a failure by the Agent to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell such Shares as required under this

(i) Each time that the Company wishes to issue and sell the Shares hereunder (each, a “**Placement**”), it will notify the Agent by email notice (or other method mutually agreed to in writing by the parties) (a “**Placement Notice**”) containing the parameters in accordance with which it desires the Shares to be sold, which shall at a minimum include the number of shares of Shares to be issued, the time period during which sales are requested to be made, any limitation on the number of Shares that may be sold in any one Trading Day (as defined below) and any minimum price below which sales may not be made, a form of which containing such minimum sales parameters necessary is attached hereto as Schedule 1. The Placement Notice shall originate from any of the individuals from the Company set forth on Schedule 2 (with a copy to each of the other individuals from the Company listed on such schedule), and shall be addressed to each of the individuals from the Agent set forth on Schedule 2, as such Schedule 2 may be amended from time to time. The Placement Notice shall be effective upon receipt by the Agent unless and until (i) in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in Section 2(a)(iii) of this Agreement, the Agent declines to accept the terms contained therein for any reason, in its sole discretion, (ii) the entire amount of the Shares have been sold, (iii) the Company suspends or terminates the Placement Notice in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in Section 2(a)(iii) below, (iv) the Company issues a subsequent Placement Notice with parameters superseding those on the earlier dated Placement Notice, or (v) this Agreement has been terminated under the provisions of Section 7. The amount of any commission or other compensation to be paid by the Company to the Agent in connection with the sale of the Shares shall be calculated in accordance with the terms set forth in Section 2(a)(v) below. It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that neither the Company nor the Agent will have any obligation whatsoever with respect to a Placement or any Shares unless and until the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent and the Agent does not decline such Placement Notice pursuant to the terms set forth above, and then only upon the terms specified therein and herein. In the event of a conflict between the terms of this Agreement and the terms of the Placement Notice, the terms of the Placement Notice will control. For the purposes hereof, “**Trading Day**” means any day on which the Company’s Common Stock is purchased and sold on the principal market on which the Common Stock is listed or quoted.

---

15

(ii) The Shares are to be sold by the Agent on a daily basis or otherwise as shall be agreed to by the Company and the Agent on any day that is a trading day for the Nasdaq Capital Market (other than a day on which the Nasdaq Capital Market is scheduled to close prior to its regular weekday closing time). The gross sales price of the Shares sold under this Section 2(a) shall be the market price for the Company’s Common Stock sold by the Agent under this Section 2(a) at the time of such sale.

(iii) Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may instruct the Agent by telephone (confirmed promptly by email) not to sell the Shares if such sales cannot be effected at or above the price designated by the Company in any such instruction. Furthermore, the Company shall not authorize the issuance and sale of, and the Agent shall not be obligated to use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell, any Share at a price lower than the minimum price therefor designated from time to time by the Company’s Board of Directors and notified to the Agent in writing. In addition, the Company or the Agent may, upon notice to the other party hereto by telephone (confirmed promptly by email), suspend the offering of the Shares, whereupon the Agent shall so suspend the offering of Shares until further notice is provided to the other party to the contrary; *provided, however*, that such suspension or termination shall not affect or impair the parties’ respective obligations with respect to the Shares sold hereunder prior to the giving of such notice. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, during any period in which the Company is in possession of material non-public information, the Company and the Agent agree that (i) no sale of Shares will take place, (ii) the Company shall not request the sale of any Shares, and (iii) the Agent shall not be obligated to sell or offer to sell any Shares.

(iv) Subject to the terms of the Placement Notice, the Agent may sell the Shares by any method permitted by law deemed to be an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on or through an exchange. Subject to the terms of any Placement Notice, the Agent may also sell Shares in negotiated transactions at market prices prevailing at the time of sale or at prices related to such prevailing market prices and/or any other method permitted by law, subject to the prior written consent of the Company.

(v) The compensation to the Agent for sales of the Shares, as an agent of the Company, shall be up to 3.0% of the gross sales price of the Shares sold pursuant to this Section 2(a), payable in cash (the “**Commission**”); provided that the combined Commission and reimbursement of the Agent for the out-of-pocket reasonable fees and disbursements of Agent’s counsel pursuant to Section 3(g), shall not exceed 8.0% of the gross sales price of the Shares. The remaining proceeds, after further deduction for any transaction fees imposed by any governmental or self-regulatory organization in respect of such sales, and applicable reimbursement of expenses that the Agent may be entitled to pursuant to Section 3(g) (if any), shall constitute the net proceeds to the Company for such Shares (the “**Net Proceeds**”).

(vi) The Agent will provide written confirmation to the Company (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the Company set forth on Schedule 2), no later than the opening of the Trading Day immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Shares hereunder, setting forth the number of Shares sold on such day, the volume-weighted average price of the Shares sold, and the Net Proceeds payable to the Company.

---

16

(vii) All Shares sold pursuant to this Section 2(a) will be delivered by the Company to the Agent for the account of the Agent, against payment of the Net Proceeds therefor, by wire transfer of same-day funds payable to the order of the Company at the offices of Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., 85 Broad Street, New York, New York 10004, or such other location as may be mutually acceptable, at 10:00 a.m. New York City time on the second full business day following the date on which such Shares are sold, or at such other time and date as Agent and the Company determine pursuant to Rule 15c6-1(a) under the Exchange Act, each such time and date of delivery being herein referred to as a “**Settlement Date**.” If the Agent so elects, delivery of the Shares may be made by credit through full fast transfer to an account or accounts at The Depository Trust Company designated by the Agent. On each Settlement Date, the Agent will deliver the Net Proceeds in same day funds to an account designated by the Company on, or prior to, such Settlement Date. The Company agrees that if the Company, or its transfer agent (if applicable), defaults in its obligation to timely deliver duly authorized Shares on a Settlement Date, the Company agrees that in addition to and in no way limiting the rights and obligations set forth in Section 5 hereto, it will (i) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim, damage, or expense (including reasonable legal fees and expenses), as incurred, arising out of or in connection with such default by the Company, (ii) reimburse the Agent for any losses incurred by the Agent attributable, directly or indirectly, to such default and (iii) pay to the Agent any commission or other compensation to which the Agent would otherwise have been entitled absent such default.

(b) *Maximum Amount.* Under no circumstances shall the aggregate number or aggregate value of the Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement exceed: (i) the aggregate number and aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock available for issuance under the Registration Statement, (ii) the aggregate number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock that are available for issuance under the Company’s certificate of incorporation or certificate of designation, (iii) the aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock permitted to be sold under the Company’s Registration Statement (including any limit set forth in General Instruction I.B.6 thereof, if applicable) or (iv) the aggregate number of aggregate dollar amount of shares of Common Stock for which the Company has filed any Prospectus Supplement in connection with the Shares (the lesser of (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) (the “**Maximum Amount**”).

(c) *No Association or Partnership.* Nothing herein contained shall constitute the Agent an unincorporated association or partner with the Company.

(d) *Duration.* Under no circumstances shall any Shares be sold pursuant to this Agreement after the date which is three years after the Registration Statement

is first declared effective by the Commission.

(e) *Market Transactions by Agent.* The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Agent has informed the Company that the Agent may, to the extent permitted under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act and this Agreement, purchase and sell shares of Common Stock for its own account while this Agreement is in effect, *provided, that* (i) no sale for its own account shall take place while a Placement Notice is in effect (except to the extent the Agent may engage in sales of Shares purchased or deemed purchased from the Company as a “riskless principal” or in a similar capacity) and (ii) the Company shall not be deemed to have authorized or consented to any such purchases or sales by the Agent. The Company consents to the Agent trading in the Common Stock for the account of any of its clients at the same time as sales of the Shares occur pursuant to this Agreement.

---

17

**3. Covenants of the Company.** The Company covenants and agrees with the Agent as follows:

(a) *Amendments to Registration Statement and Prospectus.* After the date of this Agreement and during any period in which a Prospectus relating to any Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act), the Company agrees that it will: (i) notify the Agent promptly of the time when any subsequent amendment to the Registration Statement, other than documents incorporated by reference or amendments not related to the Shares, has been filed with the Commission and/or has become effective or any subsequent supplement to the Prospectus related to the Shares has been filed and of any request by the Commission for any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement (insofar as it relates to the transactions contemplated hereby) or Prospectus or for additional information; (ii) prepare and file with the Commission, promptly upon the Agent’s request, any amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that, in the Agent’s reasonable opinion, may be necessary or advisable in connection with the sale of the Shares by the Agent (*provided, however*, that the failure of the Agent to make such request shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent’s right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement); (iii) not file any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, relating to the Shares or a security convertible into the Shares unless a copy thereof has been submitted to the Agent within a reasonable period of time before the filing and the Agent has not reasonably objected thereto (*provided, however*, that (A) the failure of the Agent to make such objection shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent’s right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement), (B) the Company has no obligation to provide the Agent any advance copy of such filing or to provide the Agent an opportunity to object to such filing if the filing does not name the Agent or does not relate to a Placement or other transaction contemplated hereunder, and (C) the only remedy that the Agent shall have with respect to the failure by the Company to provide the Agent with such copy or the filing of such amendment or supplement despite the Agent’s objection shall be to cease making sales under this Agreement); (iv) furnish to the Agent at the time of filing thereof a copy of any document that upon filing is deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement or Prospectus, except for those documents available via EDGAR; and (v) cause each amendment or supplement to the Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act.

(b) *Stop Order.* The Company will advise the Agent, promptly after it receives notice or obtains knowledge thereof, of the issuance or threatened issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, of the suspension of the qualification of the Shares for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose, and it will promptly use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such a stop order should be issued.

(c) *Continuing Amendments.* During any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act with respect to any Placement or pending sale of the Shares, (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act), the Company will comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act, as from time to time in force, and to file on or before their respective due dates all reports (taking into account any extensions available under the Exchange Act) and any definitive proxy or information statements required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, 15(d) or any other provision of or under the Exchange Act. If during such period any event occurs as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then existing, not misleading, or if during such period it is necessary to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, the Company will promptly notify the Agent to suspend the offering of Shares during such period and the Company will promptly amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance.

---

18

(d) *Qualification of the Shares.* The Company shall take or cause to be taken all necessary action to qualify the Shares for sale under the securities laws of such jurisdictions as Agent reasonably designates and to continue such qualifications in effect so long as required for the distribution of the Shares, except that the Company shall not be required in connection therewith to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general consent to service of process in any state. The Company shall promptly advise the Agent of the receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification of the Shares for offer or sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose.

(e) *Copies of Registration Statement and Prospectus.* The Company will furnish to the Agent and counsel for the Agent copies of the Registration Statement (three of which will include all consents and exhibits filed therewith), the Prospectus and all amendments and supplements to such documents, in each case as soon as available and in such quantities as the Agent may from time to time reasonably request.

(f) *Section 11(a).* The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable an earnings statement (which need not be audited) covering a 12-month period that shall satisfy the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 promulgated thereunder.

(g) *Expenses.* The Company, whether or not the transactions contemplated hereunder are consummated or this Agreement is terminated, will pay or cause to be paid (i) all expenses (including stock or transfer taxes and stamp or similar duties allocated to the respective transferees) incurred in connection with the registration, issue, sale and delivery of the Shares, (ii) all expenses and fees (including, without limitation, fees and expenses of the Company’s accountants and counsel) in connection with the preparation, printing, filing, delivery, and shipping of the Registration Statement (including the financial statements therein and all amendments, schedules, and exhibits thereto), the Shares, the Prospectus and any amendment thereof or supplement thereto, and the producing, word-processing, printing, delivery, and shipping of this Agreement and other underwriting documents or closing documents, including Blue Sky Memoranda (covering the states and other applicable jurisdictions) and including the cost to furnish copies of each thereof to the Agent, (iii) all filing fees, (iv) all fees and disbursements of the Agent’s counsel incurred in connection with the qualification of the Shares for offering and sale by the Agent or by dealers under the securities or blue sky laws of the states and other jurisdictions which Agent shall designate, (v) the fees and expenses of any transfer agent or registrar, (vi) the filing fees and fees and disbursements of Agent’s counsel incident to any required review and approval by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Shares, (vii) listing fees, if any, (viii) the cost and expenses of the Company relating to investor presentations or any “roadshow” undertaken in connection with marketing of the Shares, and (ix) all other costs and expenses incident to the performance of its obligations hereunder that are not otherwise specifically provided for herein. In addition to (iv) and (vi) above, the Company shall reimburse the Agent for the out of pocket reasonable fees and disbursements of the Agent’s counsel actually incurred in an amount which, taken together with the fees and disbursements of Agent’s counsel under clauses (iv) and (vi) of this paragraph, shall not exceed \$50,000. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, following the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company’s obligation to reimburse the Agent for any costs and expenses incurred by the Agent (including the fees and disbursements of Agents legal counsel) on an ongoing basis during the term of this Agreement will be limited to a maximum of \$3,000 per fiscal

(h) *Use of Proceeds.* The Company will apply the net proceeds from the sale of the Shares in the manner described in the Prospectus.

(i) *Restrictions on Future Sales.* Without the prior written consent of the Agent, the Company will not, directly or indirectly, offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock during the period beginning on the fifth (5th) Trading Day immediately prior to the date on which any Placement Notice is delivered to the Agent hereunder and ending on the fifth (5th) Trading Day immediately following the final Settlement Date with respect to Shares sold pursuant to such Placement Notice (or, if the Placement Notice has been terminated or suspended prior to the sale of all Shares covered by a Placement Notice, the date of such suspension or termination); and will not directly or indirectly in any other "at the market" or continuous equity transaction offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock prior to the later of the termination of this Agreement and the thirtieth (30th) day immediately following the final Settlement Date with respect to Shares sold pursuant to such Placement Notice; provided, however, that such restrictions will not be required in connection with the Company's issuance or sale of (i) Common Stock, options to purchase Common Stock or Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of options or any other type of stock-based award, pursuant to any employee or director stock option or benefits plan, stock ownership plan or dividend reinvestment plan of the Company whether now in effect or hereafter implemented, (ii) Common Stock issuable upon conversion of securities or the exercise of warrants, options or other rights in effect or outstanding, and disclosed in filings by the Company available on EDGAR or otherwise in writing to the Agent, and (iii) Common Stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock as consideration for mergers, acquisitions, other business combinations, license agreements, strategic alliances, or to suppliers or third party service providers in connection with the provision of goods or services to the Company or its subsidiaries, occurring after the date of this Agreement which are not issued for capital raising purposes.

(j) *No Stabilization or Manipulation.* The Company has not taken and will not take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to, or which might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, or which constitutes: (i) the stabilization or manipulation of the price of the Common Stock or any other security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Shares, (ii) a violation of Regulation M. The Company shall notify the Agent of any violation of Regulation M by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective officers or directors promptly after the Company has received notice or obtained knowledge of any such violation. The Company shall not invest in futures contracts, options on futures contracts or options on commodities, unless the Company is exempt from the registration requirements of the Commodity Exchange Act, as amended (the "*Commodity Act*"), or otherwise complies with the Commodity Act. The Company will not engage in any activities bearing on the Commodity Act, unless such activities are exempt from the Commodity Act or otherwise comply with the Commodity Act.

(k) *No Other Broker.* The Company will not incur any liability for any finder's or broker's fee or agent's commission in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

(l) *Timely Securities Act and Exchange Act Reports.* During any prospectus delivery period, the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to file on a timely basis with the Commission such periodic and special reports as required by the Securities Act and the Exchange Act.

(m) *Internal Controls.* The Company and its subsidiaries will maintain such controls and other procedures, including without limitation, those required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the applicable regulations thereunder, that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Commission's rules and forms, including without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including its principal executive officer and its principal financial officer, or persons performing similar functions, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure, to ensure that material information relating to Company, including its subsidiaries, is made known to them by others within those entities.

(n) *Permitted Free Writing Prospectus.* The Company represents and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Agent, and the Agent severally represents and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Company, it has not made and will not make any offer relating to the Shares that would constitute an "issuer free writing prospectus," as defined in Rule 433 under the Securities Act, or that would otherwise constitute a "free writing prospectus," as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act, required to be filed with the Commission. Any such free writing prospectus consented to by the Company and the Agent is hereinafter referred to as a "*Permitted Free Writing Prospectus*." The Company represents that it has treated or agrees that it will treat each Permitted Free Writing Prospectus as an "issuer free writing prospectus," as defined in Rule 433, and has complied and will comply with the requirements of Rule 433 applicable to any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, including timely Commission filing where required, legending and record keeping.

(o) *Representation Date and Opinions of Counsel.* Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, each time the Company (A) files an amendment to the Registration Statement or Prospectus (other than relating solely to the offering of securities other than the Shares), (B) files an annual report on Form 10-K under the Exchange Act or files its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q under the Exchange Act; and (C) files a report on Form 8-K containing amended financial statements (other than an earnings release) under the Exchange Act, (each of the dates in (A), (B) and (C) are referred to herein as a "*Representation Date*"), the Company shall cause:

(i) Lowenstein Sandler LLP, counsel for the Company, to furnish to the Agent the opinion and negative assurance letter of such counsel, dated as of such date and addressed to Agent, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; provided however, only a negative assurance letter of such counsel shall be required for each subsequent Representation Date.

(ii) Ehrlich & Fenster, intellectual property and patent counsel for the Company, to furnish to the Agent the opinion of such counsel, dated as of such date and addressed to Agent, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; provided however, the opinion of counsel shall only be required for the first Representation Date.

(iii) Hogan Lovells US LLP, regulatory counsel for the Company, to furnish to the Agent the opinion of such counsel, dated as of such date and addressed to Agent, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; provided however, the opinion of counsel shall only be required for the first Representation



Date.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the requirement to provide counsel opinions under this Section 3(o) shall be waived for any Representation Date occurring at a time at which no Placement Notice is pending, which waiver shall continue until the date the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company subsequently decides to sell Shares following a Representation Date when the Company relied on such waiver and did not provide the Agent with opinions under this Section 3(o), then before the Agent sells any Shares pursuant to Section 2(a), the Company shall cause the opinions (including the opinion pursuant to Section 3(o) if not delivered on the date of the prior Form 10-K), comfort letter, certificates and documents that would be delivered on a Representation Date to be delivered.

(p) *Representation Date and Comfort Letter.* Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, on each Representation Date to which a waiver does not apply, the Company shall cause EisnerAmper LLP, or other independent accountants satisfactory to the Agent, to deliver to the Agent a letter, dated as of such date and addressed to Agent, each confirming that they are independent public accountants within the meaning of the Securities Act and are in compliance with the applicable requirements relating to the qualifications of accountants under Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X of the Commission, and stating the conclusions and findings of said firm with respect to the financial information and other matters covered by its letter in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent of the same tenor as the first such letter received hereunder.

(q) *Representation Date and Representation Certificate.* Prior to the date of the First Placement Notice and thereafter during the term of this Agreement, on each Representation Date to which a waiver does not apply, the Company shall furnish to the Agent a certificate (the "**Representation Certificate**"), substantially in the form of Schedule 3 and dated as of such date, addressed to the Agent and signed by the chief executive officer and by the chief financial officer of the Company

---

22

---

(r) *Disclosure of Shares Sold.* The Company shall disclose in its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and in its annual report on Form 10-K the number of the Shares sold through the Agent under this Agreement, the net proceeds to the Company and the compensation paid by the Company with respect to sales of the Shares pursuant to this Agreement during the relevant quarter.

(s) *Continued Listing of Shares.* The Company shall use its commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the listing of the Common Stock on the Exchange.

(t) *Notice of Changes.* At any time during the term of this Agreement, as supplemented from time to time, the Company shall advise the Agent immediately after it shall have received notice or obtained knowledge thereof, of any information or fact that would alter or affect any opinion, certificate, letter and other document provided to the Agent pursuant to this Section 3.

(u) *Maximum Amount.* The Company will not instruct the Agent to sell or otherwise attempt to sell Shares in excess of the Maximum Amount.

**4. Conditions of Agent's Obligations.** The obligations of the Agent hereunder are subject to (i) the accuracy, as of the Effective Time, each Representation Date, each time of sale, and each Settlement Date (in each case, as if made at such date) of and compliance with all representations, warranties and agreements of the Company contained herein, (ii) the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder and (iii) the following additional conditions:

(a) *Continuing Amendments; No Stop Order.* If filing of the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, is required under the Securities Act, the Company shall have filed the Prospectus (or such amendment or supplement) or such Permitted Free Writing Prospectus with the Commission in the manner and within the time period so required (without reliance on Rule 424(b)(8) or Rule 164(b)); the Registration Statement shall be effective; no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any part thereof, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, or any amendment thereof, nor suspending or preventing the use of the Prospectus shall have been issued; no proceedings for the issuance of such an order shall have been initiated or threatened; and any request of the Commission for additional information (to be included in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or otherwise) shall have been complied with to the Agent's satisfaction.

(b) *Absence of Certain Events.* None of the following events shall have occurred and be continuing: (i) receipt by the Company or any of its subsidiaries of any request for additional information from the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority during the period of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the response to which would require any post-effective amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus; (ii) the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the initiation of any proceedings for that purpose; (iii) receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Shares for sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; or (iv) the occurrence of any event that makes any material statement made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any material document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue in any material respect or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, related Prospectus or such documents so that, in the case of the Registration Statement, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and, that in the case of the Prospectus, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading

---

23

---

(c) *No Material Misstatement or Omission.* The Agent shall not have advised the Company that the Registration Statement or any the Prospectus, contains an untrue statement of fact which, in the Agent's opinion, is material, or omits to state a fact which, in the Agent's opinion, is material and is required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.

(d) *No Adverse Changes.* Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries shall have incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock; and there shall not have been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of outstanding Common Stock due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants), or any material change in the short-term or long-term debt of the Company, or any issuance of options, warrants, convertible securities or other rights to purchase the capital stock of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, or any development involving a prospective Material Adverse Effect (whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business), or any loss by strike, fire, flood, earthquake, accident or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, incurred by the Company or any subsidiary, the effect of which, in any such case described above, in the Agent's judgment, makes it impractical or inadvisable to offer or deliver the Shares on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the Prospectus.

(e) *No Rating Downgrade.* On or after each time of sale (i) no downgrading shall have occurred in the rating accorded any of the Company's securities by any "nationally recognized statistical organization," as that term is defined by the Commission for purposes of Rule 436(g)(2) under the Securities Act, and (ii) no such organization shall have publicly announced that it has under surveillance or review, with possible negative implications, its rating of any of the Company's securities.

(f) *Compliance with Certain Obligations.* The Company shall have performed each of its obligations under Section 3(o) – 3(q).

(g) *Opinion of Agent Counsel.* On each Representation Date to which a waiver does not apply, there shall have been furnished to the Agent the opinion and negative assurance letter of Goodwin Procter LLP, counsel for the Agent, dated as of such Representation Date and addressed to Agent, in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Agent, and such counsel shall have received such papers and information as they request to enable them to pass upon such matters; provided however, the opinion of Goodwin Procter LLP shall only be required prior to the first Placement Notice, and thereafter, only a negative assurance letter of such counsel shall be required for each subsequent Representation Date.

(h) *Representation Certificate.* On or prior to the first Placement Notice, the Agent shall have received the Representation Certificate in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and its counsel.

(i) *No Objection by FINRA.* The Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. shall have raised no objection to the fairness and reasonableness of the underwriting terms and arrangements.

(j) *Timely Filing of Prospectus and Prospectus Supplement.* All filings with the Commission required by Rule 424 under the Securities Act to have been filed by the Settlement Date, as the case may be, shall have been made within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by Rule 424.

(k) *Additional Documents and Certificates.* The Company shall have furnished to Agent and the Agent's counsel such additional documents, certificates and evidence as they may have reasonably requested.

All opinions, certificates, letters and other documents described in this Section 4 will be in compliance with the provisions hereof only if they are satisfactory in form and substance to Agent and the Agent's counsel. The Company will furnish Agent with such conformed copies of such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents as Agent shall reasonably request.

## 5. *Indemnification and Contribution.*

(a) *Company Indemnification.* The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Agent, its affiliates, directors, officers and employees, and each person, if any, who controls the Agent within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act against any losses, claims, damages or liabilities, joint or several, to which the Agent may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise (including in settlement of any litigation), insofar as such losses, claims, damages or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon, in whole or in part:

(i) an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement, including the 430B Information and at any subsequent time pursuant to Rules 430A and 430B promulgated under the Securities Act, and any other information deemed to be part of the Registration Statement at the time of effectiveness, and at any subsequent time pursuant to the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, and the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto (including any documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Prospectus), any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, or any roadshow as defined in Rule 433(h) under the Act (a "*road show*"), or an omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading,

(ii) any inaccuracy in the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein;

(iii) any investigation or proceeding by any governmental authority, commenced or threatened (whether or not Agent is a target of or party to such investigation or proceeding);

(iv) any failure of the Company to perform its respective obligations hereunder or under law;

and will reimburse the Agent for any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by it in connection with investigating or defending against such loss, claim, damage, liability or action; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be liable in any such case of (i) through (iv) to the extent that any such loss, claim, damage, liability or action arises out of or is based upon an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission made in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, or any such amendment or supplement, in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by Agent specifically for use in the preparation thereof. "**Rule 430B Information**," as used herein, means information with respect to the Shares and the offering thereof permitted to be omitted from the Registration Statement when it becomes effective pursuant to Rule 430B.

In addition to its other obligations under this Section 5(a), the Company agrees that, as an interim measure during the pendency of any claim, action, investigation, inquiry or other proceeding arising out of or based upon any statement or omission, or any alleged statement or omission, described in this Section 5(a), it will reimburse the Agent on a monthly basis for all reasonable and documented legal fees or other expenses incurred in connection with investigating or defending any such claim, action, investigation, inquiry or other proceeding, notwithstanding the absence of a judicial determination as to the propriety and enforceability of the Company's obligation to reimburse the Agent for such expenses and the possibility that such payments might later be held to have been improper by a court of competent jurisdiction. To the extent any such interim reimbursement payment is so held to have been improper, the Agent shall promptly return it to the party or parties that made such payment, together with interest, compounded daily, determined on the basis of the WSJ Prime Rate (as published from time to time by the Wall Street Journal). Any such interim reimbursement payments which are not made to the Agent within 30 days of a request for reimbursement shall bear interest at the WSJ Prime Rate (as published from time to time by the Wall Street Journal).

(b) *Agent Indemnification.* The Agent will indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its affiliates, directors and officers and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act and Section 20 of the Exchange Act, against any losses, claims, damages or liabilities to which the Company may become subject, under the Securities Act or otherwise (including in settlement of any litigation, if such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Agent), but only insofar as such losses, claims, damages or liabilities (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon an untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any amendment or supplement thereto, or arise out of or are based upon the omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, in each case to the extent, but only to the extent, that such untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission was made in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by the Agent specifically for use in the preparation thereof, it being understood and agreed that the only information furnished by the Agent for use in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus consists of the statements set forth in the second paragraph under the caption "Plan of Distribution" in the Prospectus, and will reimburse such party for any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such party in connection with investigating or defending against any such loss, claim, damage, liability or action.

(c) *Notice and Procedures.* Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under subsection (a) or (b) above of notice of the commencement of any action, such indemnified party shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against the indemnifying party under such subsection, notify the indemnifying party in writing of the

commencement thereof; but the omission so to notify the indemnifying party shall not relieve the indemnifying party from any liability that it may have to any indemnified party except to the extent such indemnifying party has been materially prejudiced by such failure. In case any such action shall be brought against any indemnified party, and it shall notify the indemnifying party of the commencement thereof, the indemnifying party shall be entitled to participate in, and, to the extent that it shall wish, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense thereof, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party, and after notice from the indemnifying party to such indemnified party of the indemnifying party's election so to assume the defense thereof, the indemnifying party shall not be liable to such indemnified party under such subsection for any legal or other expenses subsequently incurred by such indemnified party in connection with the defense thereof other than reasonable costs of investigation; *provided, however*, that if, in the sole judgment of the Agent, it is advisable for the Agent to be represented by separate counsel, the Agent shall have the right to employ a single counsel to represent the Agent, in which event the reasonable fees and expenses of such separate counsel shall be borne by the indemnifying party or parties and reimbursed to the Agent as incurred (in accordance with the provisions of the second paragraph in subsection (a) above).

The indemnifying party under this Section 5 shall not be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent, but if settled with such consent or if there be a final judgment for the plaintiff, the indemnifying party agrees to indemnify the indemnified party against any loss, claim, damage, liability or expense by reason of such settlement or judgment. Notwithstanding the foregoing sentence, if at any time an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel as contemplated by this Section 5, the indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 45 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (ii) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 45 days prior to such settlement being entered into, and (iii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed the indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified party, effect any settlement, compromise or consent to the entry of judgment in any pending or threatened action, suit or proceeding in respect of which any indemnified party is or could have been a party and indemnity was or could have been sought hereunder by such indemnified party, unless such settlement, compromise or consent (a) includes an unconditional release of such indemnified party from all liability on claims that are the subject matter of such action, suit or proceeding and (b) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

---

26

(d) *Contribution; Limitations on Liability; Non-Exclusive Remedy*: If the indemnification provided for in this Section 5 is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party under subsection (a) or (b) above, then each indemnifying party shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such indemnified party as a result of the losses, claims, damages or liabilities referred to in subsection (a) or (b) above, (i) in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other from the offering of the Shares, or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) above is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in clause (i) above but also the relative fault of the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other in connection with the statements or omissions that resulted in such losses, claims, damages or liabilities, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total net proceeds from the offering (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total commissions received by the Agent (before deducting expenses) from the sale of the Shares. The relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or the Agent, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such untrue statement or omission. The Company and the Agent agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to this subsection (d) were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in this subsection (d). The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the losses, claims, damages or liabilities referred to in this subsection (d) shall be deemed to include any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating or defending against any action or claim which is the subject of this subsection (d). Notwithstanding the provisions of this subsection (d), the Agent shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the commissions received by it under this Agreement. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

(e) *Liabilities and Remedies Not Exclusive*. The liability of the Company under this Section 5 shall extend, upon the same terms and conditions, to each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act, including each director of the Company (including each person who consented to be named in the Registration Statement and is about to become a director of the Company), and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement and to each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act.

---

27

**6. Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery**: All representations, warranties, and agreements of the Company herein or in certificates delivered pursuant hereto, including but not limited to the agreements of the Agent and the Company contained in Section 5 hereof, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the Agent or any controlling person thereof, or the Company or any of its officers, directors, or controlling persons, and shall survive delivery of, and payment for, the Shares to and by the Agent hereunder.

### **7. Termination of this Agreement.**

(a) The Company shall have the right, by giving five (5) days' written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate the provisions of this Agreement relating to the solicitation of offers to purchase the Shares in its sole discretion at any time. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that (i) with respect to any pending sale, through the Agent for the Company, the obligations of the Company, including in respect of compensation of the Agent, shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding the termination and (ii) the provisions of Section 3(g), Section 5 and Section 6 of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(b) The Agent shall have the right, by giving written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate the provisions of this Agreement relating to the solicitation of offers to purchase the Shares in its sole discretion at any time. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 3(g), Section 5 and Section 6 of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(c) Unless earlier terminated pursuant to this Section 7, this Agreement shall automatically terminate upon the issuance and sale of all of the Shares through the Agent on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, except that the provisions of Section 3(g), Section 5 and Section 6 of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(d) This Agreement shall remain in full force and effect unless terminated pursuant to Sections 7(a), (b) or (c) above or otherwise by mutual agreement of the parties; provided that any such termination by mutual agreement shall in all cases be deemed to provide that Section 3(g), Section 5 and Section 6 shall remain in full force and effect.

(e) Any termination of this Agreement shall be effective on the date specified in such notice of termination; provided that such termination shall not be effective until the close of business on the date of receipt of such notice by the Agent or the Company, as the case may be. If such termination shall occur prior to the Settlement Date for any sale of the Shares, such sale shall settle in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(a)(vii) of this Agreement.

**8. Default by the Company.** If the Company shall fail at any Settlement Date to sell and deliver the number of Shares which it is obligated to sell hereunder, then this Agreement shall terminate without any liability on the part of the Agent or, except as provided in Section 3(g) hereof, any non-defaulting party. No action taken pursuant to this Section shall relieve the Company from liability, if any, in respect of such default, and the Company shall (A) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim or damage arising from or as a result of such default by the Company and (B) pay the Agent any commission to which it would otherwise be entitled absent such default.

**9. Notices.** Except as otherwise provided herein, all communications under this Agreement shall be in writing and, if to the Agent, shall be mailed, delivered or faxed to Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., 85 Broad Street, New York, New York 10004 Attention: General Counsel; with a copy to Goodwin Procter LLP, 620 Eighth Avenue, New York, New York 10018, Attention: Thomas S. Levato; if to the Company, shall be mailed or delivered to it at 1301 East Broward Blvd, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, Florida, 33301, Attention: Andrew Taylor, Chief Financial Officer, with a copy to Lowenstein Sandler LLP, 1251 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10020, Attention: Steven M. Skolnick; or in each case to such other address as the person to be notified may have requested in writing. Any party to this Agreement may change such address for notices by sending to the parties to this Agreement written notice of a new address for such purpose.

**10. Persons Entitled to Benefit of Agreement.** This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns and the controlling persons, officers and directors referred to in Section 5(e). Nothing in this Agreement is intended or shall be construed to give to any other person, firm or corporation any legal or equitable remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement or any provision herein contained. The term "successors and assigns" as herein used shall not include any purchaser, as such purchaser, of any of the Shares from the Agent.

**11. Absence of Fiduciary Relationship.** The Company, having been advised by counsel, acknowledges and agrees that: (a) the Agent has been retained solely to act as a sales agent in connection with the sale of the Shares and that no fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship between the Company (including any of the Company's affiliates (including directors), equity holders, creditors, employees or agents, hereafter, "**Company Representatives**"), on the one hand, and the Agent on the other, has been created or will be created in respect of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, irrespective of whether the Agent has advised or is advising the Company on other matters and irrespective of the use of the defined term "Agent;" (b) neither the Agent nor any of its affiliates (including directors), equity holders, creditors, employees or agents, hereafter, "**Agent Representatives**") shall have any duty or obligation to the Company or any Company Representative except as set forth in this Agreement; (b) the price and other terms of any Placement executed pursuant to this Agreement, as well as the terms of this Agreement, are deemed acceptable to the Company and its counsel, following discussions and arms-length negotiations with the Agent; (c) the Company is capable of evaluating and understanding, and in fact has evaluated, understands and accepts the terms, risks and conditions of any Placement to be executed pursuant to this Agreement, and any other transactions contemplated by this Agreement; (c) the Company has been advised that the Agent and the Agent Representatives are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and that the Agent and the Agent Representatives have no obligation to disclose any such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship, or otherwise; (d) the Company has been advised that the Agent is acting, in respect of any Placement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, solely for the benefit of the Agent, and not on behalf of the Company; and (e) the Company and the Company Representatives waive, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims that they may have against the Agent or any of the Agent Representatives for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty in respect of any Placement or any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and agree that the Agent and the Agent Representatives shall have no liability (whether direct or indirect, in contract, tort or otherwise) to the Company or any of the Company Representatives in respect of any person asserting any claim of breach of any fiduciary duty on behalf of or in right of the Company or any of the Company Representatives.

**12. Governing Law and Waiver of Jury Trial.** This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. THE COMPANY (ON ITS OWN BEHALF AND, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ON BEHALF OF ITS STOCKHOLDERS AND AFFILIATES) HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

**13. Submission to Jurisdiction, Etc.** Each party hereby submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the U.S. federal and New York state courts sitting in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby. The parties hereby irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any lawsuit, action or other proceeding in such courts, and hereby further irrevocably and unconditionally waive and agree not to plead or claim in any such court that any such lawsuit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

**14. Counterparts.** This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

**15. Construction.** The section and exhibit headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof. References herein to any law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any governmental authority shall be deemed to refer to such law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any governmental authority as amended, reenacted, supplemented or superseded in whole or in part and in effect from time to time and also to all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder

[Signature Page Follows]

Please sign and return to the Company the enclosed duplicates of this letter whereupon this letter will become a binding agreement between the Company and the Agent in accordance with its terms.

Very truly yours,

**MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.**

By: /s/ Timothy P. Moran

Name: Timothy P. Moran

Title: Chief Executive Officer

Confirmed as of the date first  
above mentioned.

**OPPENHEIMER & CO. INC.**

By: /s/ Michael A. Margolis  
Name: Michael A. Margolis, R. Ph.  
Title: Senior Managing Director,  
Co-Head of Healthcare  
Investment Banking

---

**SCHEDULE 1**

**FORM OF PLACEMENT NOTICE**

**No Facsimile and No Voicemail**

From: Motus GI Holdings, Inc.  
To: Oppenheimer & Co. Inc.  
Attention: DL-EquityATMOffering@opco.com  
Date: [●], 20[●]  
Subject: Equity Distribution Agreement – Placement Notice

Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Equity Distribution Agreement between Motus GI Holdings, Inc. (“**Company**”), and Oppenheimer & Co. Inc. (“**Agent**”) dated March 16, 2021 (the “**Agreement**”), the Company hereby requests that Agent sell up to [●] shares of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, at a minimum market price of \$[●] per share. Sales should begin on the date of this Placement Notice and shall continue until [●] / [all shares are sold].

---

**SCHEDULE 2**

**NOTICE PARTIES**

**Motus GI Holdings, Inc.**

Timothy P. Moran  
Tim@motusgi.com

Mark Pomeranz  
Mark@motusgi.com

Andrew Taylor  
Andrew@motusgi.com

**Oppenheimer & Co. Inc.**

Equity ATM  
DL-EquityATMOffering@opco.com

Peter Vogelsang  
Peter.Vogelsang@opco.com

---

**SCHEDULE 3**

**FORM OF REPRESENTATION CERTIFICATE  
PURSUANT TO SECTION 3(q) OF THE AGREEMENT**

[Date]

OPPENHEIMER & CO. INC.  
85 Broad Street  
New York, New York 10004

Ladies and Gentlemen:

The undersigned, the duly qualified and elected [●], of Motus GI Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), does hereby certify in such capacity and on behalf of the Company, pursuant to Section 3(q) of the Equity Distribution Agreement, dated March 16, 2021 (the "Equity Distribution Agreement"), between the Company and Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., that to the best of the knowledge of the undersigned:

- (i) The representations and warranties of the Company in this Agreement are true and correct, in all material respects, as if made at and as of the date of the certificate, and the Company has complied with all the agreements and satisfied all the conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied at or prior to the date of the certificate;
- (ii) No stop order or other order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any part thereof or any amendment thereof or the qualification of the Shares for offering or sale or notice that would prevent the use of the Registration Statement, nor suspending or preventing the use of the base prospectus, the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, has been issued, and no proceeding for that purpose has been instituted or, to the best of the Company's knowledge, is contemplated by the Commission or any state or regulatory body;
- (iii) The Shares have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and that all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Shares has been validly and sufficiently taken;
- (iv) The signers of this certificate have carefully examined the Registration Statement, the base prospectus, the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto (including any documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference into the base prospectus, the Prospectus and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus),

---

(A) each part of the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto (including any documents filed under the Exchange Act and deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Prospectus) contain, and contained when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, all statements and information required to be included therein, each part of the Registration Statement, or any amendment thereof, does not contain, and did not contain, when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state, and did not omit to state when such part of the Registration Statement (or such amendment) became effective, any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, and the Prospectus, as amended or supplemented, does not include and did not include as of its date, or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act Regulations, any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state and did not omit to state as of its date, or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act Regulations, a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading,

(B) at no time during the period that begins on the earlier of the date of such base prospectus, Prospectus, or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus and the date such base prospectus, Prospectus, or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus was filed with the Commission and ends on the date of this certificate did such base prospectus, Prospectus, or Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, as then amended or supplemented, include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading,

(C) since the date of the Equity Distribution Agreement, there has occurred no event required to be set forth in an amended or supplemented prospectus which has not been so set forth, and there has been no document required to be filed under the Exchange Act that upon such filing would be deemed to be incorporated by reference into the base prospectus, the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus that has not been so filed,

(D) except as stated in the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, the Company has not incurred any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, not in the ordinary course of business, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock, and except as disclosed in the base prospectus, the Prospectus, and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, there has not been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of outstanding Common Stock due to sales of Shares pursuant to the Equity Distribution Agreement and the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of equity awards or warrants), or any material change in the short term or long term debt, or any Material Adverse Effect or any development involving a prospective Material Adverse Effect (whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business), or any loss by strike, fire, flood, earthquake, accident or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, incurred by the Company, and

(E) except as stated in the base prospectus, the Prospectus, and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, there is not pending, or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened or contemplated, any action, suit or proceeding to which the Company is a party before or by any court or governmental agency, authority or body, or any arbitrator, which might result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Equity Distribution Agreement.

---

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., as Issuer**

and

**•, as Trustee**

**INDENTURE**

**Dated as of •**

**Senior Debt Securities**

---

---

CROSS REFERENCE SHEET<sup>1</sup>

Between

Provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and the Indenture to be dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_ between MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC. and \_\_\_\_\_, as Trustee:

<b>Section of the Act</b>	<b>Section of Indenture</b>
310(a)(1) and (2)	5.08
310(a)(3) and (4)	Inapplicable
310(b)	5.09(a), (b) and (d)
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	Inapplicable
311(b)	Inapplicable
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	3.05
312(b)	3.05
312(c)	4.02(c)
313(a)	5.12
313(b)(1)	5.12
313(b)(2)	5.12
313(c)	5.12
313(d)	5.12
314(a)	3.06
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)(1) and (2)	10.05
314(c)(3)	Inapplicable
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	10.05
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a), (c) and (d)	5.01
315(b)	4.11
315(e)	4.12
316(a)(1)	4.09
316(a)(2)	Not required
316(a) (last sentence)	6.04
316(b)	4.07
317(a)	4.02
317(b)	3.03(a) and (b)
318(a)	10.07

<sup>1</sup> This Cross Reference Sheet is not part of the Indenture.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

		<u>Page</u>
Article 1	DEFINITIONS	1
Section 1.01	Certain Terms Defined	1
Article 2	SECURITIES	6
Section 2.01	Forms Generally	6
Section 2.02	Form of Trustee's Certification of Authentication	6
Section 2.03	Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	7
Section 2.04	Authentication and Delivery of Securities	8
Section 2.05	Execution of Securities	8
Section 2.06	Certificate of Authentication	9
Section 2.07	Denomination and Date of Securities; Payments of Interest	9
Section 2.08	Registration, Transfer and Exchange	9
Section 2.09	Mutilated, Defaced, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	11
Section 2.10	Cancellation of Securities; Destruction Thereof	11
Section 2.11	Temporary Securities	12
Section 2.12	Computation of Interest	12
Section 2.13	CUSIP Numbers	12
Article 3	COVENANTS OF THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE	12
Section 3.01	Payment of Principal and Interest	12
Section 3.02	Offices for Payments, etc	12
Section 3.03	Paying Agents	13
Section 3.04	Certificate of the Issuer	13
Section 3.05	List of Securityholders	13
Section 3.06	Reports by the Issuer	14
Section 3.07	Corporate Existence	14
Section 3.08	Restrictions on Mergers, Sales and Consolidations	14
Section 3.09	Further Assurances	14

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

(continued)

	<b>Page</b>	
<b>Article 4</b>	<b>REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT</b>	<b>14</b>
Section 4.01	Event of Default Defined; Acceleration of Maturity; Waiver of Default	14
Section 4.02	Collection of Indebtedness by Trustee; Trustee May Prove Debt	16
Section 4.03	Application of Proceeds	17
Section 4.04	Suits for Enforcement	17
Section 4.05	Restoration of Rights on Abandonment of Proceedings	17
Section 4.06	Limitations on Suits by Securityholder	18
Section 4.07	Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Institute Certain Suits	18
Section 4.08	Powers and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver of Default	18
Section 4.09	Control by Securityholders	18
Section 4.10	Waiver of Past Defaults	19
Section 4.11	Trustee to Give Notice of Default, But May Withhold in Certain Circumstances	19
Section 4.12	Right of Court to Require Filing of Undertaking to Pay Costs	19
<b>Article 5</b>	<b>CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE</b>	<b>19</b>
Section 5.01	Duties and Responsibilities of the Trustee	19
Section 5.02	Certain Rights of the Trustee	20
Section 5.03	Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals, Disposition of Securities or Application of Proceeds Thereof	21
Section 5.04	Trustee and Agents May Hold Securities; Collections, etc	21
Section 5.05	Monies Held by Trustee	21
Section 5.06	Compensation and Indemnification of Trustee and Its Prior Claim	21
Section 5.07	Right of Trustee to Rely on Officers' Certificate, etc	22
Section 5.08	Persons Eligible for Appointment as Trustee	22
Section 5.09	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor Trustee	22
Section 5.10	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	23
Section 5.11	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business of Trustee	23
Section 5.12	Reports to the Trustee	23

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

(continued)

	<b>Page</b>
Article 6	24
CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	
Section 6.01	24
Section 6.02	24
Section 6.03	24
Section 6.04	24
Section 6.05	24
Article 7	25
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	
Section 7.01	25
Section 7.02	26
Section 7.03	27
Section 7.04	27
Section 7.05	27
Article 8	27
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, SALE OR CONVEYANCE	
Section 8.01	27
Section 8.02	27
Article 9	28
DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	
Section 9.01	28
Section 9.02	28
Section 9.03	29
Section 9.04	29
Section 9.05	30
Article 10	30
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	
Section 10.01	30
Section 10.02	30
Section 10.03	30
Section 10.04	30
Section 10.05	31
Section 10.06	31
Section 10.07	31
Section 10.08	31
Section 10.09	31
Section 10.10	31

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**  
(continued)

		<b>Page</b>
Article 11	REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	32
Section 11.01	Applicability of Article	32
Section 11.02	Notice of Redemption; Partial Redemptions	32
Section 11.03	Payment of Securities Called for Redemption	33
Section 11.04	Exclusion of Certain Securities from Eligibility for Selection for Redemption	33
Section 11.05	Conversion Arrangement On Call For Redemption	33
Article 12	CONVERSION OF SECURITIES	34
Section 12.01	Applicability of Article	34
Section 12.02	Right of Securityholders to Convert Securities	34
Section 12.03	Issuance of Shares of Capital Stock on Conversion	34
Section 12.04	No Payment or Adjustment for Interest or Dividends	35
Section 12.05	Adjustment of Conversion Rate	35
Section 12.06	No Fractional Shares to Be Issued	37
Section 12.07	Preservation of Conversion Rights Upon Consolidation, Merger, Sale or Conveyance	37
Section 12.08	Notice to Security Holders of a Series Prior to Taking Certain Types of Action	38
Section 12.09	Covenant to Reserve Shares for Issuance on Conversion of Securities	38
Section 12.10	Compliance with Governmental Requirements	38
Section 12.11	Payment of Taxes Upon Certificates for Shares Issued Upon Conversion	39
Section 12.12	Trustee's Duties with Respect to Conversion Provisions	39

THIS INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, between MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “**Issuer**”) and ●, a ● corporation, as trustee (the “**Trustee**”).

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, the Issuer has duly authorized the issue from time to time of its senior debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness to be issued in one or more series (the “**Securities**”) up to such principal amount or amounts as may from time to time be authorized in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and to provide, among other things, for the authentication, delivery and administration thereof, the Issuer has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid indenture and agreement according to its terms have been done;

NOW, THEREFORE:

In consideration of the premises and the purchases of the Securities by the Holders thereof, the Issuer and the Trustee mutually covenant and agree for the equal and proportionate benefit of the respective Holders from time to time of the Securities as follows:

ARTICLE 1  
DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 *Certain Terms Defined.* The following terms (except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise clearly requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 or the definitions of which in the Securities Act of 1933 are referred to in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, including terms defined therein by reference to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, (except as herein otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise clearly requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of this Indenture. All accounting terms used herein and not expressly defined shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in accordance with GAAP. The words “**herein**”, “**hereof**” and “**hereunder**” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision. The terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular.

“**Affiliate**” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “**control**” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “**controlling**” and “**controlled**” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“**Authorized Newspaper**” means a newspaper in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily printed on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in the place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of such place. If, because of temporary suspension of publication or general circulation of any newspaper or for any other reason, it is impossible or impracticable to make any publication of any notice required by this Indenture in the manner herein provided, such publication or other notice in lieu thereof which is made at the written direction of the Issuer by the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient publication of such notice.

“**Board of Directors**” means either the Board of Directors of the Issuer or any committee of such Board duly authorized to act hereunder.

“**Business Day**” means, with respect to any Security, a day that in the city (or in all of the cities, if more than one) in which amounts are payable, as specified in the form of such Security, is not a day on which banking institutions are authorized by law or regulation to close.

“**Capitalized Lease**” means, as applied to any Person, any lease of any property (whether real, personal, or mixed) of which the discounted present value of the rental obligations of such Person as lessee, in conformity with GAAP, is required to be capitalized on the balance sheet of such Person; and “**Capitalized Lease Obligation**” is defined to mean the rental obligations, as aforesaid, under such lease.

“**Capital Stock**” means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s capital stock or other ownership interests, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of this Indenture, including, without limitation, all Common Stock and Preferred Stock.

“**Closing Price**” on any day when used with respect to any class of Capital Stock means the closing sale price per share (or if no closing sale price is reported, the average of the bid and ask prices or, if more than one in either case, the average of the average bid and the average ask prices) on that date as reported by The Nasdaq Capital Market or, if such Capital Stock is not listed on The Nasdaq Capital Market, then on the principal U.S. national or regional securities exchange on which such Capital Stock is then listed. If such Capital Stock is not listed on either The Nasdaq Capital Market or on any U.S. national or regional securities exchange on the relevant date, the Closing Price will be the last quoted bid price for the Company’s Common Stock in the over-the-counter market on the relevant date as reported by the OTC Markets Group Inc. or similar organization. In the event that no such quotation is available for any day, the Board of Directors shall be entitled to determine in good faith the current market price on the basis of such quotations as it considers appropriate.

“**Commission**” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or if at any time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties on such date.

“**Common Stock**” means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of the Indenture, including, without limitation, all series and classes of such common stock.

“**Corporate Trust Office**” means the office of the Trustee at which the corporate trust business of the Trustee shall, at any particular time, be principally administered, which office is, at the date as of which this Indenture is dated, located at ●.

“**Currency Agreement**” means any foreign exchange contract, currency swap agreement, or other similar agreement or arrangement designed to protect against the fluctuation in currency values.

“**Default**” means any Event of Default as defined in Section 4.01 and any event that is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“**Depository**” means, with respect to the Securities of any series issuable or issued in the form of one or more Registered Global Securities, the Person designated as Depository by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.03 until a successor Depository shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “**Depository**” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Depository hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “**Depository**” as used with respect to the Securities of any such series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Registered Global Securities of that series.

“**Determination Date**” has the meaning specified in Section 12.05.

“**Event of Default**” has the meaning specified in Section 4.01.

“**GAAP**” means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America as in effect as of the date of determination, including, without limitation, those set forth in the opinions and pronouncements of the Accounting Principles Board of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and statements and pronouncements of the Financial Accounting Standards Board or in such other statements by such other entity as approved by a significant segment of the accounting profession. All ratios and computations contained in this Indenture shall be computed in conformity with GAAP applied on a consistent basis.

“**Guarantee**” means any obligation, contingent or otherwise, of any Person directly or indirectly guaranteeing any Indebtedness or other obligation of any other Person and, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any obligation, direct or indirect, contingent or otherwise, of such Person:

(i) to purchase or pay (or advance or supply funds for the purchase or payment of) such Indebtedness or other obligation of such other Person (whether arising by virtue of partnership arrangements, or by agreement to keep-well, to purchase assets, goods, securities, or services, to take-or-pay, or to maintain financial statement conditions or otherwise); or

(ii) entered into for purposes of assuring in any other manner the obligee of such Indebtedness or other obligation of the payment thereof or to protect such obligee against loss in respect thereof (in whole or in part);

*provided*, that the term “**Guarantee**” shall not include endorsements for collection or deposit in the ordinary course of business. The term “**Guarantee**” used as a verb has a corresponding meaning.

“**Holder**”, “**Securityholder**” or other similar terms mean the registered holder of any Security.

“**Indebtedness**” means, with respect to any Person at any date of determination (without duplication):

(i) all indebtedness of such Person for borrowed money;

(ii) all obligations of such Person evidenced by bonds, debentures, notes, or other similar instruments, in each case, for value received or settlement of claims;

(iii) all obligations of such Person in respect of letters of credit or other similar instruments (including reimbursement obligations with respect thereto);

(iv) all obligations of such Person to pay the deferred and unpaid purchase price of property or services (but excluding trade accounts payable or accrued liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business);

(v) all obligations of such Person as lessee under Capitalized Leases;

(vi) all Indebtedness of other Persons secured by a Lien on any asset of such Person, whether or not such Indebtedness is assumed by such Person; *provided* that the amount of such Indebtedness shall be the lesser of:

(1) the fair market value of such asset at such date of determination; and

(2) the amount of such Indebtedness;

(vii) all Indebtedness of other Persons to the extent Guaranteed by such Person; and

(viii) to the extent not otherwise included in this definition, obligations under Currency Agreements and Interest Rate Agreements.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in no event shall the term “Indebtedness” be deemed to include letters of credit or bonds that secure performance or surety bonds or similar instruments that are issued in the ordinary course of business.

The amount of Indebtedness of any Person at any date shall be the outstanding balance at such date of all unconditional obligations as described above and, with respect to contingent obligations, the maximum liability upon the occurrence of the contingency giving rise to the obligation; *provided* that:

(x) the amount outstanding at any time of any Indebtedness issued with original issue discount is the face amount of such Indebtedness less the remaining unamortized portion of the original issue discount of such Indebtedness at such time as determined in conformity with GAAP; and

(y) Indebtedness shall not include any liability for federal, state, local, or other taxes.

**“Indenture”** means this instrument as originally executed and delivered or, if amended or supplemented as herein provided, as so amended or supplemented or both, and shall include the forms and terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated hereunder.

**“Interest”** means, when used with respect to non-interest bearing Securities, interest payable after maturity. **“Interest Rate Agreement”** means any obligation of any Person pursuant to any interest rate swap, cap, collar or similar arrangement providing protection against fluctuations in interest rates. For purposes of the Indenture, the amount of such obligation shall be the amount determined in respect thereof as of the end of the then most recently ended fiscal quarter of such Person, based on the assumption that such obligation had terminated at the end of such fiscal quarter, and in making such determination, if any agreement relating to such obligation provides for the netting of amounts payable by and to such Person thereunder or if any such agreement provides for the simultaneous payment of amounts by and to such Person, then in each such case, the amount of such obligation shall be the net amount so determined, plus any premium due upon default by such Person.

**“Issuer”** means the Person identified as “Issuer” in the first paragraph hereof and, subject to Article 8, its successors and assigns.

**“Lien”** means, with respect to any asset, any mortgage, lien, pledge, charge, security interest or encumbrance of any kind, or any other type of preferential arrangement that has the practical effect of creating a security interest, in respect of such asset. For the purposes of this Indenture, the Issuer shall be deemed to own subject to a Lien any asset that it has acquired or holds subject to the interest of a vendor or lessor under any conditional sale agreement, capital lease or other title retention agreement relating to such asset.

**“Officers’ Certificate”** means a certificate signed by the chairman of the Issuer’s Board of Directors, its president or any vice president, and by its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary of the Issuer, and delivered to the Trustee. Each such certificate shall comply with Section 314 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and include the statements provided for in Section 10.05.

**“Opinion of Counsel”** means an opinion in writing signed by legal counsel who may be an employee of or counsel to the Issuer and who shall be satisfactory to the Trustee. Each such opinion shall comply with Section 314 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and include the statements provided for in Section 10.05, if and to the extent required hereby.

**“Original Issue Date”** of any Security (or portion thereof) means the earlier of (i) the date of such Security or (ii) the date of any Security (or portion thereof) for which such Security was issued (directly or indirectly) on registration of transfer, exchange or substitution.

**“Original Issue Discount Security”** means any Security that provides for an amount less than the Principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01.



**“Outstanding”**, when used with reference to Securities, shall, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, mean, as of any particular time, all Securities authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except:

(i) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for the payment or redemption of which monies in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Issuer) or shall have been set aside, segregated and held in trust by the Issuer for the Holders of such Securities (if the Issuer shall act as its own paying agent), provided that if such Securities, or portions thereof, are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as herein provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and

(iii) Securities in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered, or which shall have been paid, pursuant to the terms of Section 2.09 (except with respect to any such Security as to which proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that such Security is held by a person in whose hands such Security is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Issuer).

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite Principal amount of Outstanding Securities of any or all series have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the Principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purposes shall be the amount of the Principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of such determination upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01.

**“Person”** means any individual, corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, association, joint stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof or any other entity.

**“Preferred Stock”** means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of the Indenture, including, without limitation, all series and classes of such preferred stock.

**“Principal”** means, with respect to the Securities or any Security or any portion thereof, the principal amount of such Securities, Security or portion thereof, and shall be deemed to include “and premium, if any”.

**“record date”** as used with respect to any interest payment date (except a date for payment of defaulted interest), has the meaning specified in Section 2.07.

**“Registered Global Security”** means a Security evidencing all or a part of a series of Registered Securities, issued to the Depository for such series in accordance with Section 2.04, and bearing the legend prescribed in Section 2.04.

**“Registered Security”** means any Security registered on the register maintained by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.08.

**“Responsible Officer”** when used with respect to the Trustee means any officer within the corporate trust department of the Trustee, including any vice president, assistant vice president, assistant secretary, assistant treasurer, trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee who customarily performs functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such person’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

**“Security”** or **“Securities”** has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture, or, as the case may be, Securities that have been authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

**“Subsidiary”** means, with respect to any Person, any corporation, association or other business entity of which more than 50% of all votes represented by all classes of outstanding Voting Stock is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person.

**“Trustee”** means the Person identified as **“Trustee”** in the first paragraph hereof and, subject to the provisions of Article 5, shall also include any successor trustee.

“**Trust Indenture Act of 1939**” (except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01 and 7.02) means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was originally executed.

“**UCC**” means the Uniform Commercial Code, as in effect in each applicable jurisdiction.

“**Unregistered Security**” means any Security other than a Registered Security.

“**U.S. Government Obligations**” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of an agency of instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such U.S. Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such U.S. Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest on or principal of the U.S. Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“**Voting Stock**” means, with respect to any Person, capital stock of any class or kind ordinarily having the power to vote for the election of directors, managers or other voting members of the governing body of such Person.

“**vice president**” when used with respect to the Issuer or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title of “**vice president**”.

“**Wholly-Owned**” is defined to mean, with respect to any Subsidiary of any Person, such Subsidiary if all of the outstanding common stock or other similar equity ownership interests (but not including preferred stock) in such Subsidiary (other than any director’s qualifying shares or investments by foreign nationals mandated by applicable law) is owned directly or indirectly by such Person.

“**Yield to Maturity**” means the yield to maturity on a series of securities, calculated at the time of issuance of such series, or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such series, and calculated in accordance with accepted financial practice.

ARTICLE 2  
SECURITIES

Section 2.01 *Forms Generally*. The Securities of each series shall be substantially in such form (not inconsistent with this Indenture) as shall be established by or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have imprinted or otherwise reproduced thereon such legend or legends, not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, as may be required to comply with any law or with any rules or regulations pursuant thereto, or with any rules of any securities exchange or to conform to general usage, all as may be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities. The Issuer shall furnish any such legends to the Trustee in writing.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

Section 2.02 *Form of Trustee’s Certification of Authentication*. The Trustee’s certificate of authentication on all Securities shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated herein and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

•,  
as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory:

Section 2.03 *Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series*. The aggregate Principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series:

(a) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other Securities);

(b) any limit upon the aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 2.08, 2.09, 2.11 or Section 12.03);

(c) the date or dates on which the Principal of the Securities of the series is payable;

(d) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, or the method by which such rate shall be determined, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the interest payment dates on which such interest shall be payable and the record dates for the determination of Holders to whom interest is payable;

(e) the place or places where the Principal of and any interest on Securities of the series shall be payable (if other than as provided in Section 3.02);

(f) the price or prices at which, the period or periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Issuer;

(g) the obligation, if any, of the Issuer to redeem, purchase or repay Securities of the series at the option of a Holder thereof and the price or prices at which, the period or periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, purchased or repaid, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(h) the obligation, if any, of the Issuer to permit the conversion of the Securities of such series into Capital Stock, and the terms and conditions upon which such conversion shall be effected (including, without limitation, the initial conversion price or rate, the conversion period and any other provision in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in this Indenture relative to such obligation);

(i) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any multiple thereof, the denominations in which Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(j) if other than the Principal amount thereof, the portion of the Principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01 or provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 4.02;

(k) if the Securities of the series are issuable in whole or in part as one or more Registered Global Securities, the identity of the Depositary for such Registered Global Security or Securities;

(l) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture); and

(m) any trustees, authenticating or paying agents, transfer agents or registrar or any other agents with respect to the Securities of such series.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to such resolution of the Board of Directors or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

Section 2.04 *Authentication and Delivery of Securities*. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Issuer may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Issuer to the Trustee for authentication, and the Trustee shall thereupon authenticate and deliver such Securities to or upon the written order of the Issuer, such order to be signed by both (a) the chairman of its Board of Directors, its president or any vice president and by its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary, without any further action by the Issuer. In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to Section 5.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon:

(a) a certified copy of any resolution or resolutions of the Board of Directors authorizing the action taken pursuant to the resolution or resolutions delivered under clause (b) below;

(b) a copy of any resolution or resolutions of the Board of Directors relating to such series, in each case certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Issuer;

(c) an executed supplemental indenture, if any, and the documentation required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7.04;

(d) an Officers' Certificate setting forth the form and terms of the Securities as required pursuant to Section 2.01 and 2.03, respectively and prepared in accordance with Section 10.05;

(e) an Opinion of Counsel, prepared in accordance with Section 10.05, to the effect:

(i) that the form or forms and terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors or by a supplemental indenture as permitted by Section 2.01 and 2.03 in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(ii) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Issuer in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable against the Issuer in accordance with their terms, except to the extent that enforcement thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance or similar laws now or hereafter in effect relating to creditors' rights generally, and general principles of equity (regardless of whether enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law).

The Trustee shall have the right to decline to authenticate and deliver any Securities under this section if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken by the Issuer or if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors or board of trustees, executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or trustees or Responsible Officers shall determine that such action would expose the Trustee to personal liability.

If the Issuer shall establish pursuant to Section 2.03 that the Securities of a series or a portion thereof are to be issued in the form of one or more Registered Global Securities, then the Issuer shall execute (in accordance with Section 2.05) and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery one or more Registered Global Securities that (i) shall represent and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate Principal amount of all of the Securities of such series issued in such form and not yet canceled, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository for such Registered Global Security or Securities or the nominee of such Depository, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to such Depository or its custodian or pursuant to such Depository's instructions and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Unless and until it is exchanged in whole or in part for Securities in definitive registered form, this Security may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depository to a nominee of the Depository or by a nominee of the Depository to the Depository or another nominee of the Depository or by the Depository or any such nominee to a successor Depository or a nominee of such successor Depository."

Section 2.05 *Execution of Securities*. The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Issuer by the chairman of its Board of Directors, its president, any vice president, its treasurer or any assistant treasurer, under its corporate seal and attested by its secretary or any assistant secretary. Such signatures may be the manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such officers. The seal of the Issuer may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities. Typographical and other minor errors or defects in any such reproduction of the seal or any such signature shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any Security that has been duly authenticated and delivered by the Trustee.

In case any officer of the Issuer who shall have signed any of the Securities shall cease to be such officer before the Security so signed shall be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee or disposed of by the Issuer, such Security nevertheless may be authenticated and delivered or disposed of as though the person who signed such Security had not ceased to be such officer of the Issuer; and any Security may be signed on behalf of the Issuer by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Security, shall be the proper officers of the Issuer, although at the date of the execution and delivery of this Indenture any such person was not such an officer.

Section 2.06 *Certificate of Authentication*. Only such Securities as shall bear thereon a certificate of authentication substantially in the form hereinbefore recited, executed by the Trustee by the manual signature of one of its authorized signatories, shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose. Such certificate by the Trustee upon any Security executed by the Issuer shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the Holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

Section 2.07 *Denomination and Date of Securities; Payments of Interest*. The Securities shall be issuable as registered securities without coupons and in denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 2.03. In the absence of any such specification with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any multiple thereof. The Securities shall be numbered, lettered, or otherwise distinguished in such manner or in accordance with such plan as the officers of the Issuer executing the same may determine as evidenced by the execution and authentication thereof.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication, shall bear interest, if any, from the date and shall be payable on the dates, in each case, which shall be specified as contemplated by Section 2.03.

The person in whose name any Security of any series is registered at the close of business on any record date applicable to a particular series with respect to any interest payment date for such series shall be entitled to receive the interest, if any, payable on such interest payment date notwithstanding any transfer or exchange of such Security subsequent to the record date and prior to such interest payment date, except if and to the extent the Issuer shall default in the payment of the interest due on such interest payment date for such series, in which case such defaulted interest shall be paid to the persons in whose names Outstanding Securities for such series are registered at the close of business on a subsequent record date (which shall be not less than five Business Days prior to the date of payment of such defaulted interest) established by notice given by mail by or on behalf of the Issuer to the Holders of Securities not less than 15 days preceding such subsequent record date. The term "**record date**" as used with respect to any interest payment date (except a date for payment of defaulted interest) shall mean the date specified as such in the terms of the Securities of any particular series, or, if no such date is so specified, if such interest payment date is the first day of a calendar month, the fifteenth day of the next preceding calendar month or, if such interest payment date is the fifteenth day of a calendar month, the first day of such calendar month, whether or not such record date is a Business Day.

Section 2.08 *Registration, Transfer and Exchange*. The Issuer will keep or cause to be kept at each office or agency to be maintained for the purpose as provided in Section 3.02 a register or registers in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it will register, and will register the transfer of, Securities as in this Article provided. Such register shall be in written form in the English language or in any other form capable of being converted into such form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times such register or registers shall be open for inspection by the Trustee.

At the option of the Holder thereof, Registered Securities of any series (other than a Registered Global Security, except as set forth below) may be exchanged for a Registered Security or Registered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Registered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. If the Securities of any series are issued in both registered and unregistered form, except as otherwise established pursuant to Section 2.03, at the option of the Holder thereof, Unregistered Securities of any series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Unregistered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. At the option of the Holder thereof, if Unregistered Securities of any series, maturity date, interest rate and Original Issue Date are issued in more than one authorized denomination, except as otherwise established pursuant to Section 2.03, such Unregistered Securities may be exchanged for Unregistered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Unregistered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. Registered Securities of any series may not be exchanged for Unregistered Securities of such series. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Registered Securities presented for registration of transfer, exchange, redemption, conversion or payment shall be duly endorsed by, or be accompanied by a written instrument or instruments of transfer in form satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

The Issuer may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities. No service charge shall be made for any such transaction.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 2.08, unless and until it is exchanged in whole or in part for Securities in definitive registered form, a Registered Global Security representing all or a portion of the Securities of a series may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depository for such series to a nominee of such Depository or by a nominee of such Depository to such Depository or another nominee of such Depository or by such Depository or any such nominee to a successor Depository for such series or a nominee of such successor Depository.

If at any time the Depository for any Registered Global Securities of any series notifies the Issuer that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Registered Global Securities or if at any time the Depository for such Registered Global Securities shall no longer be eligible under applicable law, the Issuer shall appoint a successor Depository eligible under applicable law with respect to such Registered Global Securities. If a successor Depository eligible under applicable law for such Registered Global Securities is not appointed by the Issuer within 90 days after the Issuer receives such notice or becomes aware of such ineligibility, the Issuer will execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of the Issuer's order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Registered Securities of such series and tenor, will authenticate and make available for delivery Registered Securities of such series and tenor, in any authorized denominations, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to the Principal amount of such Registered Global Securities, in exchange for such Registered Global Securities.

The Issuer may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that any Registered Global Securities of any series shall no longer be maintained in global form. In such event, or in the event that there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to a series of Securities, the Issuer will, upon the request of any Holder, execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of the Issuer's order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Registered Securities of such series and tenor, will authenticate and make available for delivery, Registered Securities of such series and tenor in any authorized denominations, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to the Principal amount of such Registered Global Securities, in exchange for such Registered Global Securities.

Any time the Registered Securities of any series are not in the form of Registered Global Securities pursuant to the preceding two paragraphs, the Issuer agrees to supply the Trustee with a reasonable supply of certificated Registered Securities without the legend required by Section 2.04 and the Trustee agrees to hold such Registered Securities in safekeeping until authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

If established by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.03 with respect to any Registered Global Security, the Depository for such Registered Global Security may surrender such Registered Global Security in exchange in whole or in part for Registered Securities of the same series and tenor in definitive registered form on such terms as are acceptable to the Issuer and such Depository. Thereupon, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, without service charge,

(i) to the Person specified by such Depository new Registered Securities of the same series and tenor, of any authorized denominations as requested by such Person, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to and in exchange for such Person's beneficial interest in the Registered Global Security; and

(ii) to such Depository a new Registered Global Security in a denomination equal to the difference, if any, between the Principal amount of the surrendered Registered Global Security and the aggregate Principal amount of Registered Securities authenticated and delivered pursuant to clause (i) above.

Registered Securities issued in exchange for a Registered Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.08 shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository for such Registered Global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee or an agent of the Issuer or the Trustee. The Trustee or such agent shall deliver such Securities to or as directed by the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

All Securities issued upon any transfer or exchange of Securities shall be valid obligations of the Issuer, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such transfer or exchange.

Notwithstanding anything herein or in the forms or terms of any Securities to the contrary, none of the Issuer, the Trustee or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be required to exchange any Unregistered Security for a Registered Security if such exchange would result in adverse Federal income tax consequences to the Issuer (such as, for example, the inability of the Issuer to deduct from its income, as computed for Federal income tax purposes, the interest payable on the Unregistered Securities) under then applicable United States Federal income tax laws. The Trustee and any such agent shall be entitled to rely on an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel in determining such result.

Neither the Registrar nor the Issuer shall be required (i) to issue, authenticate, register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any series for a period of 15 days before the mailing of a notice of redemption of such Securities to be redeemed or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security selected for redemption in whole or in part.

*Section 2.09 Mutilated, Defaced, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.* In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or defaced and shall be surrendered to the Trustee, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated or defaced Security. If the Holder of any Security claims that the Security has been lost, destroyed or wrongfully taken, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the lost, destroyed or wrongfully taken Security, if the applicant so requests before the Issuer has notice that the Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, and the applicant furnishes to the Issuer and to the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to indemnify and defend and to save each of them harmless and the applicant satisfies other reasonable requirements imposed by the Issuer.

Upon the issuance of any substitute Security, the Issuer may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee and its counsel) connected therewith. In case any Security which has matured or is about to mature or has been called for redemption in full shall become mutilated or defaced or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Issuer may instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated or defaced Security), if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee such security or taking, the applicant shall also furnish to the Issuer and the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or wrongful taking of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

Every substitute Security of any series issued pursuant to the provisions of this section by virtue of the fact that any such Security is destroyed, lost or stolen shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Issuer, whether or not the destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone and shall be entitled to all the benefits of (but shall be subject to all the limitations of rights set forth in) this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of such series duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that, to the extent permitted by law, the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, defaced or destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Securities and shall preclude any and all other rights or remedies.

*Section 2.10 Cancellation of Securities; Destruction Thereof.* All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, repurchase, conversion, registration of transfer or exchange, if surrendered to the Issuer or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee, shall be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be canceled by it; and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. The Trustee shall dispose of canceled Securities held by it in accordance with the record retention policies of the Trustee in effect from time to time and, if such canceled certificates are destroyed, shall deliver a certificate of destruction to the Issuer. If the Issuer shall acquire any of the Securities, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

Section 2.11 *Temporary Securities*. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities for any series, the Issuer may execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver temporary Securities for such series (printed, lithographed, typewritten or otherwise reproduced, in each case in form satisfactory to the Trustee). Temporary Securities of any series shall be issuable as registered Securities without coupons, of any authorized denomination, and substantially in the form of the definitive Securities of such series but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Issuer with the concurrence of the Trustee. Temporary Securities may contain such reference to any provisions of this Indenture as may be appropriate. Every temporary Security shall be executed by the Issuer and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities. Without unreasonable delay the Issuer shall execute and shall furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor without charge at each office or agency to be maintained by the Issuer for that purpose pursuant to Section 3.02, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities of such series a like aggregate Principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

Section 2.12 *Computation of Interest*. Except as otherwise specified in the Securities of a series, interest shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

Section 2.13 *CUSIP Numbers*. The Issuer in issuing the Securities may use "CUSIP" numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use "CUSIP" numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Issuer will notify the Trustee of any change in the "CUSIP" numbers.

### ARTICLE 3 COVENANTS OF THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE

Section 3.01 *Payment of Principal and Interest*. The Issuer covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the Principal of, and interest on, each of the Securities of such series at the place or places, at the respective times and in the manner provided in such Securities. Each installment of interest on the Securities of any series may be paid by mailing checks for such interest payable to or upon the written order of the Holders of Securities entitled thereto as they shall appear on the registry books of the Issuer.

Notwithstanding any provisions of this Indenture and the Securities of any series to the contrary, if the Issuer and a Holder of any Registered Security so agree or if expressly provided pursuant to Section 2.03, payments of interest on, and any portion of the Principal of, such Holder's Registered Security shall be made by the paying agent, upon receipt from the Issuer of immediately available funds by 11:00 a.m., New York City time (or such other time as may be agreed to between the Issuer and the paying agent) or the Issuer, directly to the Holder of such Security (by wire transfer of Federal funds or immediately available funds or otherwise) if the Holder has delivered written instructions to the Trustee 15 days prior to such payment date requesting that such payment will be so made and designating the bank account to which such payments shall be so made and, in the case of payments of Principal, surrenders the same to the Trustee. The Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the last instruction delivered by the Holder pursuant to this Section 3.01 unless a new instruction is delivered 15 days prior to a payment date. The Issuer will indemnify and hold each of the Trustee and any paying agent harmless against any loss, liability or expense (including attorneys' fees and expenses) resulting from any act or omission to act on the part of the Issuer or any such Holder in connection with any such agreement or from making any payment in accordance with any such agreement.

Section 3.02 *Offices for Payments, etc.* So long as any of the Securities remain outstanding, the Issuer will maintain in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York an office or agency (n) where the Securities may be presented for payment, (o) where the Securities may be presented for registration of transfer and for exchange as in this Indenture provided, (p) where notices and demands to or upon the Issuer in respect of the Securities or of this Indenture may be served and (q) for Securities of each series that is convertible, where such Securities may be presented for conversion. The Issuer will give to the Trustee written notice of the location of any such office or agency and of any change of location thereof. Unless otherwise specified in accordance with Section 2.03, the Issuer hereby initially designates the Corporate Trust Office of Trustee as the office to be maintained by it for each such purpose. In case the Issuer shall fail to so designate or maintain any such office or agency or shall fail to give such notice of the location or of any change in the location thereof, presentations and demands may be made and notices may be served at the Corporate Trust Office.



Section 3.03 *Paying Agents*. Whenever the Issuer shall appoint a paying agent other than the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series, it will cause such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(a) that it will hold all sums received by it as such agent for the payment of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Issuer or by any other obligor on the Securities of such series) in trust for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series or of the Trustee;

(b) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Issuer (or by any other obligor on the Securities of such series) to make any payment of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series when the same shall be due and payable; and during the continuance of the failure referred to in clause Section 3.03(b) above.

The Issuer will, on or prior to each due date of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay such Principal or interest so becoming due, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee of any failure to take such action.

If the Issuer shall act as its own paying agent with respect to the Securities of any Series, it will, on or before each due date of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series a sum sufficient to pay such Principal or interest so becoming due. The Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee of any failure to take such action.

Whenever the Issuer shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the Principal of or interest on any Securities of such series, deposit with the paying agent or agents for the Securities of such series a sum, by 11:00 a.m. New York City time in immediately available funds on the payment date, sufficient to pay the Principal or interest so becoming due with respect to the Securities of such series, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee in writing of any failure so to act.

Anything in this section to the contrary notwithstanding, the Issuer may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining a satisfaction and discharge with respect to one or more or all series of Securities hereunder, or for any other reason, pay or cause to be paid to the Trustee all sums held in trust for any such series by the Issuer or any paying agent hereunder, as required by this Section, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the trusts herein contained.

Anything in this Section 3.03 to the contrary notwithstanding, the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section 3.03 is subject to the provisions of Section 9.05.

Section 3.04 *Certificate of the Issuer*. Within 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended ●, and within 120 days after the close of each fiscal year thereafter, the Issuer will furnish to the Trustee a brief certificate (which need not comply with Section 10.05) from the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Issuer as to his or her knowledge of the Issuer's compliance with all conditions and covenants under the Indenture (such compliance to be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under the Indenture).

At the time such certificate is filed, the Issuer will also file with the Trustee a letter or statement of the independent accountants who shall have certified the financial statements of the Issuer for its preceding fiscal year to the effect that, in making the examination necessary for certification of such financial statements, they have obtained no knowledge of any default by the Issuer in the performance or fulfillment of any covenant, agreement or condition contained in this Indenture, which default remains uncured at the date of such letter or statement, or, if they shall have obtained knowledge of any such uncured default, specifying in such letter or statement such default or defaults and the nature and status thereof, it being understood that such accountants shall not be liable directly or indirectly for failure to obtain knowledge of any such default or defaults, and that nothing contained in this Section 3.04 shall be construed to require such accountants to make any investigation beyond the scope required in connection with such examination.

Section 3.05 *List of Securityholders*. If and so long as the Trustee shall not be the Security registrar for the Securities of any series, the Issuer will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee a list in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require of the names and addresses of the Holders of the Securities of such series pursuant to Section 312 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (a) semi-annually not more than 10 days after each record date for the payment of interest on such Securities, as hereinabove specified, as of such record date and on dates to be determined pursuant to Section 2.03 for non-interest bearing Securities in each year and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after receipt by the Issuer of any such request as of a date not more than 10 days prior to the time such information is furnished.

Section 3.06 *Reports by the Issuer*. The Issuer covenants to:

(a) file, whether or not required to do so under applicable law, with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Issuer files the same with the Commission:

(i) copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports which the Issuer files with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and

(ii) such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Issuer with the conditions and covenants provided for in this Indenture as the Issuer may from time to time file with the Commission; and

(b) transmit to the Securityholders, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 10.04, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed with the Trustee pursuant to the provisions of subdivision (a) of this Section 3.06 as may be required by the rules and regulations of the Commission.

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Issuer's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

Section 3.07 *Corporate Existence*. So long as any of the Securities remain unpaid, the Issuer will at all times (except as otherwise provided or permitted elsewhere in this Indenture) do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence.

Section 3.08 *Restrictions on Mergers, Sales and Consolidations*. So long as any of the Securities remain unpaid, the Issuer will not consolidate or merge with or sell, convey or lease all or substantially all of its property to any other corporation except as permitted in Article 8 hereof.

Section 3.09 *Further Assurances*. From time to time whenever requested by the Trustee, the Issuer will execute and deliver such further instruments and assurances and do such further acts as may be reasonably necessary or proper to carry out more effectually the purposes of this Indenture or to secure the rights and remedies hereunder of the Holders of the Securities of any series.

#### ARTICLE 4 REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

Section 4.01 *Event of Default Defined; Acceleration of Maturity; Waiver of Default* "Event of Default" with respect to Securities of any series wherever used herein, means any one of the following events which shall have occurred and be continuing (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(a) default by the Issuer in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of such series as and when the same shall become due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days;

(b) default by the Issuer in the payment of all or any part of the Principal on any of the Securities of such series as and when the same shall become due and payable either at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, and continuance of such default for a period of five days;

(c) default by the Issuer in the performance, or breach by the Issuer, of any of its covenants or agreements in respect of the Securities of such series (other than a covenant or agreement in respect of the Securities of such series a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this section specifically dealt with), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 30 consecutive days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Issuer by the Trustee or to the Issuer and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in Principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected thereby, a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a notice of default hereunder;

(d) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Issuer in an involuntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee or sequestrator (or similar official) of the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Issuer's property and assets or the ordering of the winding up or liquidation of the Issuer's affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days;

(e) the commencement by the Issuer of a voluntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or the consent by the Issuer to the entry of an order for relief in an involuntary case under any such law, or the consent by the Issuer to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee or sequestrator (or similar official) of the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Issuer's property, or the making of any general assignment by the Issuer for the benefit of creditors; or

(f) any other Event of Default provided in the supplemental indenture or resolution of the Board of Directors under which such series of Securities is issued or in the form of Security for such series.

If an Event of Default described in clauses 4.01(a), 4.01(b), 4.01(c) or 4.01(f) occurs and is continuing, then, and in each and every such case, unless the Principal of all of the Securities of such series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any affected series then Outstanding hereunder (each such series voting as a separate class) by notice in writing to the Issuer (and to the Trustee if given by Securityholders), may declare the entire Principal (or, if the Securities of such series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such series) of all Securities of such series and the interest accrued thereon, if any, to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default described in clauses Section 4.01(d) or Section 4.01(e) occurs and is continuing, then the Principal amount of all the Securities then Outstanding and interest accrued thereon, if any, shall be and become immediately due and payable, without any notice or other action by any Holder or the Trustee, to the full extent permitted by applicable law.

The foregoing provisions, however, are subject to the condition that if, at any time after the Principal (or, if the Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal as may be specified in the terms thereof) of the Securities of any series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the monies due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the Issuer shall pay or shall deposit with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of such series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) and the Principal of any and all Securities of such series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) which shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such Principal and, to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law, on overdue installments of interest, at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series (or at the respective rates of interest or Yields to Maturity of all the Securities, as the case may be) to the date of such payment or deposit) and such amount as shall be sufficient to cover reasonable compensation to the Trustee, its agents, attorneys and counsel, and all other expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith, and if any and all Events of Default under the Indenture, other than the non-payment of the Principal of Securities which shall have become due by acceleration, shall have been cured, waived or otherwise remedied as provided herein, then and in every such case the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of all the then Outstanding Securities of all such series that have been accelerated, each such series voting as a separate class, by written notice to the Issuer and to the Trustee, may waive all defaults with respect to such series (or with respect to all the Securities, as the case may be) and rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences, but no such waiver or rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or shall impair any right consequent thereon.

For all purposes under this Indenture, if a portion of the Principal of any Original Issue Discount Securities shall have been accelerated and declared due and payable pursuant to the provisions hereof, then, from and after such declaration, unless such declaration has been rescinded and annulled, the Principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed, for all purposes hereunder, to be such Portion of the Principal thereof as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, and payment of such portion of the Principal thereof as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, together with interest, if any, thereon and all other amounts owing thereunder, shall constitute payment in full of such Original Issue Discount Securities.

Section 4.02 *Collection of Indebtedness by Trustee; Trustee May Prove Debt*. The Issuer covenants that (h) in case default shall be made in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of any series when such interest shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 30 days or (i) in case default shall be made in the payment of all or any part of the Principal of any of the Securities of any series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of such series or upon any redemption or by declaration or otherwise, then in each case upon demand of the Trustee, the Issuer will pay to the Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series (x) the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all Securities of such series for Principal or interest, as the case may be (with interest to the date of such payment upon the overdue Principal and, to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law, on overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series) and (y) in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, their respective agents and counsel, and any expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of its negligence or bad faith.

Until such demand is made by the Trustee, the Issuer may pay the Principal of and interest on the Securities of any series to the registered Holders, whether or not the Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series be overdue.

In case the Issuer shall fail forthwith to pay such amounts upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceedings to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Issuer or other obligor upon such Securities and collect in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Issuer or other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated, the monies adjudged or decreed to be payable.

In case there shall be pending proceedings relative to the Issuer or any other obligor upon the Securities under Title 11 of the United States Code or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law, or in case a receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization, liquidator, sequestrator or similar official shall have been appointed for or taken possession of the Issuer or its property or such other obligor, or in case of any other comparable judicial proceedings relative to the Issuer or other obligor upon the Securities of any series, or to the creditors or property of the Issuer or such other obligor, the Trustee, irrespective of whether the Principal of any Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand pursuant to the provisions of this Section, shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceedings or otherwise:

(a) to file and prove a claim or claims for the whole amount of Principal and interest (or, if the Securities of any series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such series) owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities of any series, and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and for reimbursement of all expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, except as a result of negligence or bad faith) and of the Securityholders allowed in any judicial proceedings relative to the Issuer or other obligor upon the Securities of any series, or to the creditors or property of the Issuer or such other obligor;

(b) unless prohibited by applicable law and regulations, to vote on behalf of the Holders of the Securities of any series in any election of a trustee or a standby trustee in arrangement, reorganization, liquidation or other bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings or person performing similar functions in comparable proceedings; and

(c) to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims, and to distribute all amounts received with respect to the claims of the Securityholders and of the Trustee on their behalf; and any trustee, receiver, or liquidator, custodian or other similar official is hereby authorized by each of the Securityholders to make payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of payments directly to the Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover reasonable compensation to the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and all other expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith and all other amounts due to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee pursuant to Section 5.06.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or vote for or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of any series or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding except, as aforesaid, to vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar person.

All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the Securities, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof on any trial or other proceedings relative thereto, and any such action or proceedings instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment, subject to the payment of the expenses, disbursements and compensation of the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents and attorneys, shall be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such action was taken.

In any proceedings brought by the Trustee (and also any proceedings involving the interpretation of any provision of this Indenture to which the Trustee shall be a party) the Trustee shall be held to represent all the Holders of the Securities in respect to which such action was taken, and it shall not be necessary to make any Holders of such Securities parties to any such proceedings.

Section 4.03 *Application of Proceeds*. Any monies collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article in respect of any series shall be applied in the following order at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such monies on account of Principal or interest, upon presentation of the several Securities in respect of which monies have been collected and stamping (or otherwise noting) thereon the payment, or issuing Securities of such series in reduced Principal amounts in exchange for the presented Securities of like series if only partially paid, or upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses applicable to such series in respect of which monies have been collected, including reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents and attorneys and of all expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith, and all other amounts due to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee pursuant to Section 5.06;

SECOND: In case the Principal of the Securities of such series in respect of which monies have been collected shall not have become and be then due and payable, to the payment of interest on the Securities of such series in default in the order of the maturity of the installments of such interest, with interest (to the extent that such interest has been collected by the Trustee) upon the overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in such Securities, such payments to be made ratably to the persons entitled thereto, without discrimination or preference;

THIRD: In case the Principal of the Securities of such series in respect of which monies have been collected shall have become and shall be then due and payable, to the payment of the whole amount then owing and unpaid upon all the Securities of such series for Principal and interest, with interest upon the overdue Principal, and (to the extent that such interest has been collected by the Trustee) upon overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series; and in case such monies shall be insufficient to pay in full the whole amount so due and unpaid upon the Securities of such series, then to the payment of such Principal and interest or yield to maturity, without preference or priority of Principal over interest or yield to maturity, or of interest or yield to maturity over Principal, or of any installment of interest over any other installment of interest, or of any Security of such series over any other Security of such series, ratably to the aggregate of such Principal and accrued and unpaid interest or yield to maturity; and

FOURTH: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Issuer or any other person lawfully entitled thereto.

Section 4.04 *Suits for Enforcement*. In case an Event of Default has occurred, has not been waived and is continuing, the Trustee may proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

Section 4.05 *Restoration of Rights on Abandonment of Proceedings*. In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case the Issuer and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Issuer, the Trustee and the Securityholders shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

Section 4.06 *Limitations on Suits by Securityholder*. No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue of or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any action or proceeding at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise upon or under or with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a trustee, receiver, liquidator, custodian or other similar official or for any other remedy hereunder, unless such Holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof, as hereinbefore provided, and unless also the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series then outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action or proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as trustee hereunder and shall have offered to the Trustee indemnity satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby and the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity shall have failed to institute any such action or proceeding and no direction inconsistent with such written request shall have been given to the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.09; it being understood and intended, and being expressly covenanted by the Holder of every Security with every other Holder and the Trustee, that no one or more Holders of Securities of any series shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other such Holder of Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such Holder or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all Holders of Securities of the applicable series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

Section 4.07 *Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Institute Certain Suits*. Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture and any provision of any Security, the right of any Holder of any Security to receive payment of the Principal of or interest on such Security on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security, or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such Holder.

Section 4.08 *Powers and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver of Default*. Except as provided in Section 4.06, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Securityholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Securityholder to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to Section 4.06, every power and remedy given by this Indenture or by law to the Trustee or to the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

Section 4.09 *Control by Securityholders*. The Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of each series affected (with each series voting as a separate class) at the time outstanding shall have the right to direct the time, method, and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series by this Indenture; provided that such direction shall not be otherwise than in accordance with law and the provisions of this Indenture and provided further that (subject to the provisions of Section 5.01) the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, shall determine that the action or proceeding so directed may not lawfully be taken or if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors, the executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or Responsible Officers of the Trustee shall determine that the action or proceedings so directed would subject the Trustee to personal liability or if the Trustee in good faith shall so determine that the actions or forbearances specified in or pursuant to such direction would be unduly prejudicial to the interests of Holders of the Securities of all series so affected not joining in the giving of said direction.

Nothing in this Indenture shall impair the right of the Trustee to take any action which is not inconsistent with such direction or directions by Securityholders.

Section 4.10 *Waiver of Past Defaults*. Prior to a declaration of the acceleration of the maturity of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 4.01, the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series at the time Outstanding (each such series voting as a separate class) may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive an existing default or Event of Default, except a default in the payment of Principal of or interest on any Security as specified in clauses (a) or (b) of Section 4.01 or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each Holder affected as provided in Section 7.02. In the case of any such waiver, the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities of each series affected shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist and be deemed to have been cured and not to have occurred, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, and not to have occurred for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 4.11 *Trustee to Give Notice of Default, But May Withhold in Certain Circumstances*. The Trustee shall give to the Securityholders of any series, as the names and addresses of such Holders appear on the registry books, notice by mail of all defaults known to Responsible Officers of the Trustee which have occurred with respect to such series, such notice to be transmitted within 90 days after the occurrence thereof, unless such defaults shall have been cured before the giving of such notice (the term "default" or "defaults" for the purposes of this section being hereby defined to mean any event or condition which is, or with notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default); *provided* that, except in the case of default in the payment of the Principal of or interest on any of the Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or trustees and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the Securityholders of such series.

Section 4.12 *Right of Court to Require Filing of Undertaking to Pay Costs* All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; *provided* that the provisions of this Section 4.12 shall not apply to (i) any suit instituted by the Trustee, (ii) any suit instituted by any Securityholder or group of Securityholders of any series holding in the aggregate more than 10% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series or (iii) any suit instituted by a Holder pursuant to Section 4.07.

## ARTICLE 5 CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE

Section 5.01 *Duties and Responsibilities of the Trustee*. With respect to the Holders of any series of Securities issued hereunder, the Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a particular series and after the curing or waiving of all Events of Default which may have occurred with respect to such series, undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (which has not been cured or waived) the Trustee shall exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(a) Prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of any series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to such series which may have occurred:

(i) the duties and obligations of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any statements, certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such statements, certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this subsection (b) shall not be construed to limit the effect of subsection (a) of this Section 5.01;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts; and

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture.

None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if there shall be reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such liability is not reasonably assured to it.

The provisions of this Section 5.01 are in furtherance of and subject to Sections 315 and 316 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939.

Whether or not therein expressly provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct of, affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 5.01.

Section 5.02 *Certain Rights of the Trustee*. In furtherance of and subject to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, and subject to Section 5.01:

(a) In the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, Officers' Certificate or any other certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) any request, direction, order or demand of the Issuer mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by an Officers' Certificate (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed); and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be evidenced to the Trustee by a copy thereof certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Issuer;

(c) the Trustee may consult with counsel of its selection and any advice or Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with such advice or Opinion of Counsel;

(d) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the trusts or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in connection with such request, order or direction;

(e) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion, rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default hereunder and after the curing or waiving of all Events of Default, the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, appraisal, bond, debenture, note, coupon, security, or other paper or document unless requested in writing so to do by the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of all series affected then outstanding; provided that, if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require indemnity satisfactory to it against such expenses or liabilities as a condition to proceeding, and the reasonable expenses of every such investigation shall be paid by the Issuer or, if paid by the Trustee or any predecessor trustee, shall be repaid by the Issuer upon demand;



(g) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys not regularly in its employ and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any such agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion, rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(i) the Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture;

(j) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder; and

(k) the Trustee may request that the Issuer deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

Section 5.03 *Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals, Disposition of Securities or Application of Proceeds Thereof.* The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Issuer, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same. The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or the Securities. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Issuer of any of the Securities or of the proceeds thereof.

Section 5.04 *Trustee and Agents May Hold Securities; Collections, etc.* The Trustee or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not the Trustee or such agent and may otherwise deal with the Issuer and receive, collect, hold and retain collections from the Issuer with the same rights it would have if it were not the Trustee or such agent.

Section 5.05 *Monies Held by Trustee.* All monies received by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by mandatory provisions of law. Neither the Trustee nor any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be under any liability for interest on any monies received by it hereunder.

Section 5.06 *Compensation and Indemnification of Trustee and Its Prior Claim.* The Issuer covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee from time to time, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such compensation as shall be agreed in writing from time to time by the Issuer and the Trustee (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust) and the Issuer covenants and agrees to pay or reimburse the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by or on behalf of it in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all agents and other persons not regularly in its employ) except to the extent any such expense, disbursement or advance may arise from its negligence or bad faith. The Issuer also covenants and agrees to indemnify the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this Indenture or the trusts hereunder and the performance of its duties hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against or investigating any claim of liability (whether asserted by the Issuer, a Holder or any other Person) in the premises, except to the extent such loss, liability or expense is due to the negligence or bad faith of the Trustee or such predecessor Trustee. The obligations of the Issuer under this section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee for expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder and shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or the resignation or removal of the Trustee. Such additional indebtedness shall be a senior claim and lien to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of particular Securities, and the Securities are hereby subordinated to such senior claim. The parties agree that if the Trustee renders services following an Event of Default under Section 4.01(d) or 4.01(e), compensation for such services is intended to constitute administrative expense under any bankruptcy law.

Section 5.07 *Right of Trustee to Rely on Officers' Certificate, etc.* Subject to Section 5.01 and 5.02, whenever in the administration of the trusts of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee, and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

Section 5.08 *Persons Eligible for Appointment as Trustee.* The Trustee for each series of Securities hereunder shall at all times be a corporation which is eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and which has (or which is a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary, directly or indirectly, of a bank holding company which has) a combined capital and surplus of \$50,000,000. If such corporation or holding company publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of a Federal, State or District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation or holding company shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published.

Section 5.09 *Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor Trustee.* (a) The Trustee, or any trustee or trustees hereafter appointed, may at any time resign with respect to one or more or all series of Securities by giving written notice of resignation to the Issuer. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Issuer shall promptly appoint a successor trustee or trustees with respect to the applicable series by written instrument in duplicate, executed by authority of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee or trustees. If no successor Trustee shall have been so appointed with respect to any series and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition, at the expense of the Issuer, any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of the applicable series for at least six months may, subject to the provisions of Section 4.12, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor Trustee. Such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor Trustee.

(b) In case at any time any of the following shall occur:

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 with respect to any series of Securities after written request therefor by the Issuer or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of such series for at least six months;

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Issuer or by any Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or a receiver or liquidator of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation; then, in any such case, the Issuer may remove the Trustee with respect to the applicable series of Securities and appoint a successor trustee for such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor Trustee, or, subject to Section 315(e) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of such series for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to such series. Such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to Securities of such series and appoint a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series by delivering to the Trustee so removed, to the successor Trustee so appointed and to the Issuer the evidence provided in Section 6.01 of the action in that regard taken by the Securityholders.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee with respect to any series and any appointment of a successor trustee with respect to such series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section 5.09 shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 5.10.

Section 5.10 *Acceptance of Appointment by Successor*. Any successor Trustee appointed as provided in Section 5.09 shall execute and deliver to the Issuer and to its predecessor Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Trustee with respect to all or any applicable series shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all rights, powers, duties and obligations with respect to such series of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as Trustee for such series hereunder. On the written request of the Issuer or of the successor Trustee, upon payment of its charges then unpaid, the Trustee ceasing to act shall, subject to Section 5.06, pay over to the successor Trustee all monies at the time held by it hereunder and shall execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers, duties and obligations. Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Issuer shall execute any and all instruments in writing for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights and powers. Any Trustee ceasing to act shall, nevertheless, retain a prior claim upon all property or funds held or collected by such Trustee to secure any amounts then due it pursuant to the provisions of Section 5.06.

If a successor Trustee is appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Issuer, the predecessor Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any applicable series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto which shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series as to which the predecessor Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the predecessor Trustee, and shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be Trustee of a trust or trusts under separate indentures.

Upon acceptance of appointment by any successor Trustee as provided in this Section 5.10, the Issuer shall mail notice thereof by first-class mail to the Holders of Securities of any series for which such successor Trustee is acting as Trustee at their last addresses as they shall appear in the Security register. If the acceptance of appointment is substantially contemporaneous with the resignation, then the notice called for by the preceding sentence may be combined with the notice called for by Section 5.09. If the Issuer fails to mail such notice within 10 days after acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee, the successor Trustee shall cause such notice to be mailed at the expense of the Issuer.

Section 5.11 *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business of Trustee*. Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall be eligible under the provisions of Section 5.08, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding.

In case at the time such successor to the Trustee shall succeed to the trusts created by this Indenture any of the Securities of any series shall have been authenticated but not delivered, any such successor to the Trustee may adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee and deliver such Securities so authenticated; and, in case at that time any of the Securities of any series shall not have been authenticated, any successor to the Trustee may authenticate such Securities either in the name of any predecessor hereunder or in the name of the successor Trustee; and in all such cases such certificate shall have the full force which it is anywhere in the Securities of such series or in this Indenture provided that the certificate of the Trustee shall have; provided, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities of any series in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

Section 5.12 *Reports to the Trustee*. The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto. If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall, within sixty days after each May 15 following the date of the initial issuance of Securities under this Indenture deliver to Holders a brief report, dated as of such May 15, which complies with the provisions of such Section 313(a).

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange, if any, upon which the Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Issuer. The Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee when the Securities are listed on any stock exchange and of any delisting thereof.

ARTICLE 6  
CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

Section 6.01 *Evidence of Action Taken by Securityholders.* Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by a specified percentage in Principal amount of the Securityholders of any or all series may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such specified percentage of Securityholders in person or by agent duly appointed in writing; and, except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee. Proof of execution of any instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 5.01 and 5.02) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Issuer, if made in the manner provided in this Article.

Section 6.02 *Proof of Execution of Instruments and of Holding of Securities; Record Date.* Subject to Section 5.01 and 5.02, the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder or his agent or proxy may be proved by the certificate of any notary public or other officer authorized to take acknowledgment of deeds, that the Person executing such instrument acknowledged to such notary public or other such officer the execution thereof, or by an affidavit of a witness to such execution sworn to before any such notary public or other officer. Where such execution is by an officer of a corporation or association or a member of a partnership on behalf of such corporation, association or partnership, as the case may be, or by any other Person acting in a representative capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of such Person's authority. The holding of Securities shall be proved by the Security register or by a certificate of the registrar thereof. The Issuer may set a record date for purposes of determining the identity of Holders of Securities of any series entitled to vote or consent to any action referred to in Section 6.01, which record date may be set at any time or from time to time by notice to the Trustee, for any date or dates (in the case of any adjournment or reconsideration) not more than 60 days nor less than five days prior to the proposed date of such vote or consent, and thereafter, notwithstanding any other provisions hereof, only Holders of Securities of such series of record on such record date shall be entitled to so vote or give such consent or revoke such vote or consent.

Section 6.03 *Holders to be Treated as Owners.* Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Issuer, the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee may deem and treat the person in whose name any Security shall be registered upon the Security register for such series as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing thereon) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the Principal of and, subject to the provisions of this Indenture, interest on such Security and for all other purposes, and neither the Issuer nor the Trustee nor any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. All such payments so made to any such person, or upon his order, shall be valid, and, to the extent of the sum or sums so paid, effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability for monies payable upon any such Security.

Section 6.04 *Securities Owned by Issuer Deemed Not Outstanding.* In determining whether the Holders of the requisite aggregate Principal amount of Outstanding Securities of any or all series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, Securities which are owned by the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities with respect to which such determination is being made or by any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities with respect to which such determination is being made shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver only Securities as to which the Trustee has received written notice are so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Issuer or any other obligor upon the Securities or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities. In case of a dispute as to such right, the advice of counsel shall be full protection in respect of any decision made by the Trustee in accordance with such advice. Upon request of the Trustee, the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee promptly an Officers' Certificate listing and identifying all Securities, if any, known by the Issuer to be owned or held by or for the account of any of the above-described persons; and, subject to Section 5.01 and 5.02, the Trustee shall be entitled to accept such Officers' Certificate as conclusive evidence of the facts therein set forth and of the fact that all Securities not listed therein are Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination.

Section 6.05 *Right of Revocation of Action Taken.* At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 6.01, of the taking of any action by the Holders of the percentage in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any Holder of a Security the serial number of which is shown by the evidence to be included among the serial numbers of the Securities the Holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice at the Corporate Trust Office and upon proof of holding as provided in this Article, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the Holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders and owners of such Security and of any Securities issued in exchange or substitution therefor, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon any such Security. Any action taken by the Holders of the percentage in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of all the Securities affected by such action.

ARTICLE 7  
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 7.01 *Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders*. The Issuer, when authorized by a resolution of its Board of Directors certified to the Trustee, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for one or more of the following purposes:

(a) to evidence the succession of another corporation to the Issuer, or successive successions, and the assumption by the successor corporation of the covenants, agreements and obligations of the Issuer pursuant to Article 8;

(b) (i) to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture, (ii) to conform the terms of Securities to the description thereof in the prospectus and prospectus supplement (or similar offering document) offering such Securities or (iii) to make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under this Indenture or under any supplemental indenture as the Board of Directors may deem necessary or desirable and which shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of the Securities in any material respect;

(c) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Section 2.01 and 2.03;

(d) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 5.10;

(e) to comply with any requirements of the Commission in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939;

(f) to provide for uncertificated or Unregistered Securities and to make all appropriate changes for such purpose;

(g) to make any change that would not reasonably be expected to adversely affect the rights of any Holder in any material respect;

(h) to add to the covenants of the Issuer such new covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions as its Board of Directors shall consider to be for the protection of the Holders of Securities, and with respect to which the Trustee has received an Opinion of Counsel to a similar effect, and to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an Event of Default; provided, that in respect of any such additional covenant, restriction, condition or provision such supplemental indenture may provide for a particular period of grace after default (which period may be shorter or longer than that allowed in the case of other defaults) or may provide for an immediate enforcement upon such an Event of Default or may limit the remedies available to the Trustee upon such an Event of Default or may limit the right of the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series to waive such an Event of Default; or

(i) to make any change so long as no Securities are Outstanding.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Issuer in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations which may be therein contained and to accept the conveyance, transfer, assignment, mortgage or pledge of any property thereunder, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this section may be executed without the consent of the Holders of any of the Securities at the time outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 7.02.

Section 7.02 *Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders*. With the consent (evidenced as provided in Article 6) of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of all series affected by such supplemental indenture (voting as one class), the Issuer, when authorized by a resolution of its Board of Directors, and the Trustee may, from time to time and at any time, enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each such series; provided, that no such supplemental indenture shall without the consent of each Holder affected thereby:

- (a) change the stated maturity of the Principal of, or the time of payment of any installment of interest on, such Holder's Security;
- (b) reduce the Principal thereof or the rate of interest thereon, or any premium payable with respect thereto;
- (c) change any place of payment where, or the currency in which, any Security or any premium or the interest thereon is payable;
- (d) change the provisions for calculating any redemption or repurchase price, including the definitions relating thereto;
- (e) make any change to Section 4.07 or Section 4.10 (except to include other provisions subject to Section 4.10);
- (f) reduce the percentage in Principal amount of outstanding Securities of the relevant series the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, for any waiver of compliance with any provisions of this Indenture or any defaults and their consequences provided for in this Indenture;
- (g) alter or impair the right to convert any Security at the rate and upon the terms provided in Article 12;
- (h) waive a default in the payment of Principal of or interest on any Security of such Holder (except pursuant to a rescission of acceleration pursuant to Section 4.01);
- (i) adversely affect the rights of such Holder under any mandatory redemption or repurchase provision or any right of redemption or repurchase at the option of such Holder;
- (j) modify any of the provisions of this Section 7.02, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each outstanding Security affected thereby; or
- (k) change or waive any provision that, pursuant to a board resolution or indenture supplemental hereto establishing the terms of one or more series of Securities, is prohibited to be so changed or waived.

Upon the written request of the Issuer, accompanied by a copy of a resolution of the Board of Directors certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Issuer authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders as aforesaid and other documents, if any, required by Section 6.01, the Trustee shall join with the Issuer in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion, but shall not be obligated to, enter into such supplemental indenture.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders under this section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Issuer and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Issuer shall mail a notice thereof by first class mail to the Holders of Securities of each series affected thereby at their addresses as they shall appear on the registry books of the Issuer, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture. Any failure of the Issuer to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

Section 7.03 *Effect of Supplemental Indenture*. Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions hereof, this Indenture shall be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Holders of Securities of each series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

Section 7.04 *Documents to Be Given to Trustee*. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 5.01 and 5.02, may receive an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article 7 complies with the applicable provisions of this Indenture.

Section 7.05 *Notation on Securities in Respect of Supplemental Indentures*. Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee for such series as to any matter provided for by such supplemental indenture or as to any action taken at any such meeting. If the Issuer or the Trustee shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Issuer, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of such series then outstanding.

## ARTICLE 8 CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, SALE OR CONVEYANCE

Section 8.01 *Issuer May Consolidate, etc., on Certain Terms*. The Issuer covenants that it will not merge or consolidate with any other Person or sell, convey, transfer, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its property and assets to any Person (other than a consolidation with or merger with or into or a sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition to a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary with a positive net worth; *provided* that, in connection with any such merger of the Issuer with a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary, no consideration (other than common stock) in the surviving person or the Issuer shall be issued or distributed to the stockholders of the Issuer), unless (xiv) either (x) the Issuer shall be the continuing corporation, or the successor corporation or (y) the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Issuer is merged or that acquires by sale or conveyance substantially all the assets of the Issuer (if other than the Issuer) shall be a corporation or limited liability company organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America or any jurisdiction thereof and shall expressly assume the due and punctual payment of the Principal of and interest on all the Securities, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all of the covenants and conditions of this Indenture to be performed or observed by the Issuer, by supplemental indenture satisfactory to the Trustee, executed and delivered to the Trustee by such Person, (xv) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing and (xvi) the Issuer delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that such consolidation, merger or transfer and such supplemental indenture complies with this Section 8.01 and that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to such transaction have been complied with; *provided, however*, that the foregoing limitations shall not apply if, in the good faith determination of the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be evidenced by a board resolution certified to the Trustee, the principal purpose of such transaction is to change the state of incorporation of the Issuer; and *provided further* that any such transaction shall not have as one of its purposes the evasion of the foregoing limitations.

Section 8.02 *Successor Corporation Substituted*. In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition, and following such an assumption by the successor Person, such successor Person shall succeed to and be substituted for the Issuer, with the same effect as if it had been named herein. Such successor Person may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Issuer prior to such succession any or all of the Securities issuable hereunder which theretofore shall not have been signed by the Issuer and delivered to the Trustee; and, upon the order of such successor Person instead of the Issuer and subject to all the terms, conditions and limitations in this Indenture prescribed, the Trustee, pursuant to the terms hereof, shall authenticate and shall deliver any Securities which previously shall have been signed and delivered by the officers of the Issuer to the Trustee for authentication, and any Securities which such successor Person thereafter shall cause to be signed and delivered to the Trustee for that purpose. All of the Securities so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Indenture as the Securities theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Indenture as though all of such Securities had been issued at the date of the execution hereof.

In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

Upon the assumption by the successor Person in the manner described in this Article, the Issuer shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE 9  
DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE

Section 9.01 *Defeasance Within One Year of Payment*. Except as otherwise provided in this Section 9.01, the Issuer may terminate its obligations under the Securities of any series and this Indenture with respect to Securities of such series if:

(a) all Securities of such series previously authenticated and delivered (other than destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Securities of such series that have been replaced or Securities of such series for whose payment money or securities have theretofore been held in trust and thereafter repaid to the Issuer, as provided in Section 9.05) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation and the Issuer has paid all sums payable by it hereunder; or

(b) (xviii) (A) the Securities of such series mature within one year or all of them are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for giving the notice of redemption, (B) the Issuer irrevocably deposits in trust with the Trustee, as trust funds solely for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities for that purpose, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee), without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all Federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series to maturity or redemption, as the case may be, and to pay all other sums payable by it hereunder and (C) the Issuer delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

With respect to the foregoing clause (i), only the Issuer's obligations under Sections 5.06 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive. With respect to the foregoing clause (ii), only the Issuer's obligations in Section 2.03 through 2.11, 3.02, 5.06, 5.09 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive until such Securities of such series are no longer outstanding. Thereafter, only the Issuer's obligations in Section 5.06 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive. After any such irrevocable deposit, the Trustee shall acknowledge in writing the discharge of the Issuer's obligations under the Securities of such series and this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series except for those surviving obligations specified above.

Section 9.02 *Defeasance*. Except as provided below, the Issuer will be deemed to have paid and will be discharged from any and all obligations in respect of the Securities of any series and the provisions of this Indenture will no longer be in effect with respect to the Securities of such series (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Issuer, shall execute instruments in form and substance satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee acknowledging the same) if the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(a) the Issuer has irrevocably deposited in trust with the Trustee as trust funds specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, Holders of the Securities of such series, for payment of the Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee) without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay and discharge the Principal of and accrued interest on the outstanding Securities of such series to maturity or earlier redemption (irrevocably provided for under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee), as the case may be;

(b) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Issuer is a party or by which it is bound;

(c) no default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit;



(d) the Issuer shall have delivered to the Trustee (1) either (x) a ruling directed to the Trustee received from the Internal Revenue Service to the effect that the Holders of the Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the Issuer's exercise of its option under this Section 9.02 and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred or (y) an Opinion of Counsel to the same effect as the ruling described in clause (x) above and based upon a change in law and (2) an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of the Securities of such series have a valid security interest in the trust funds subject to no prior liens under the UCC; and

(e) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section 9.02 of the Securities of such series have been complied with.

The Issuer's obligations in Section 2.03 through 2.11, 3.02, 5.06, 5.09 and 9.05 with respect to the Securities of such series shall survive until such Securities are no longer outstanding. Thereafter, only the Issuer's obligations in Section 5.06 and 9.05 shall survive.

Section 9.03 *Covenant Defeasance*. The Issuer may omit to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 3.04, 3.06 or 3.08 (or any other specific covenant relating to the Securities of any series provided for in a Board Resolution or supplemental indenture pursuant to Section 2.03 which may by its terms be defeased pursuant to this Section 9.03), and such omission shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default under clause (c) of Section 4.01, with respect to the outstanding Securities of such series if:

(a) the Issuer has irrevocably deposited in trust with the Trustee as trust funds solely for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, for payment of the Principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of such series, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof in an amount sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee) without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all Federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay and discharge the Principal of and interest on the outstanding Securities of such series to maturity or earlier redemption (irrevocably provided for under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee), as the case may be;

(b) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Issuer is a party or by which it is bound;

(c) no default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit;

(d) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that (A) the Holders of the Securities of such series have a valid security interest in the trust funds subject to no prior liens under the UCC and (B) such Holders will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred; and

(e) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the covenant defeasance contemplated by this Section 9.03 of the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Section 9.04 *Application of Trust Money*. Subject to Section 9.05, the Trustee or Paying Agent shall hold in trust money or U.S. Government Obligations deposited with it pursuant to 9.01, 9.02, or 9.03, as the case may be, in respect of the Securities of any series and shall apply the deposited money and the proceeds from deposited U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with the Securities of such series and this Indenture to the payment of Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series; provided that such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Issuer shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to 9.01, 9.02, or 9.03, as the case may be, or the Principal and interest received in respect thereof, other than any such tax, fee or other charge that by law is for the account of the Holders.

Section 9.05 *Repayment to Issuer*. Subject to Section 5.06, 9.01, the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall promptly pay to the Issuer upon request set forth in an Officers' Certificate any money held by them at any time and not required to make payments hereunder and thereupon shall be relieved from all liability with respect to such money. Subject to applicable escheat or abandoned property laws, the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall pay to the Issuer upon written request any money held by them and required to make payments hereunder under this Indenture that remains unclaimed for two years; *provided* that the Trustee or such Paying Agent before being required to make any payment shall cause to be published at the expense of the Issuer once in an Authorized Newspaper or mail to each Holder entitled to such money at such Holder's address (as set forth in the register) notice that such money remains unclaimed and that after a date specified therein (which shall be at least 30 days from the date of such publication or mailing) any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Issuer. After payment to the Issuer, Holders entitled to such money must look to the Issuer for payment as general creditors unless an abandoned property law designates another Person, and all liability of the Trustee and such Paying Agent with respect to such money shall cease.

#### ARTICLE 10 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Section 10.01 *Incorporators, Stockholders, Officers and Directors Exempt from Individual Liability*. No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any incorporator, as such, or against any past, present or future stockholder, officer, director or employee, as such, of the Issuer or of any successor Person thereof, either directly or through the Issuer or any successor Person thereof, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders thereof and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 10.02 *Provisions of Indenture for the Sole Benefit of Parties and Securityholders*. Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, expressed or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any person, firm or corporation, other than the parties hereto and their successors and the Holders of the Securities, any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture or under any covenant or provision herein contained, all such covenants and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and their successors and of the Holders of the Securities.

Section 10.03 *Successors and Assigns of Issuer Bound by Indenture*. All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements contained in this Indenture by or on behalf of the Issuer shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 10.04 *Notices and Demands on Issuer, Trustee and Securityholders*. Any notice or demand which by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given or served by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities to or on the Issuer may be given or served by being deposited postage prepaid, first-class mail (except as otherwise specifically provided herein) addressed (until another address of the Issuer is filed by the Issuer with the Trustee) to Motus GI Holdings, Inc. at 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301, Attention: Chief Financial Officer. Any notice, direction, request or demand by the Issuer or any Securityholder to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made at the Corporate Trust Office.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder entitled thereto, at such Holder's last address as it appears in the Security register. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service, it shall be impracticable to mail notice to the Issuer and Securityholders when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any manner of giving such notice as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

Section 10.05 *Officers' Certificates and Opinions of Counsel; Statements to be Contained Therein.* Upon any application or demand by the Issuer to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include (a) a statement that the person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition, (b) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based, (c) a statement that, in the opinion of such person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with and (d) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Any certificate, statement or opinion of an officer of the Issuer may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of or representations by counsel, unless such officer knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous. Any certificate, statement or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, information with respect to which is in the possession of the Issuer, upon the certificate, statement or opinion of or representations by an officer or officers of the Issuer, unless such counsel knows that the certificate, statement or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous.

Any certificate, statement or opinion of an officer of the Issuer or of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to accounting matters, upon a certificate or opinion of or representations by an accountant or firm of accountants in the employ of the Issuer, unless such officer or counsel, as the case may be, knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the accounting matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous.

Any certificate or opinion of any independent firm of public accountants filed with the Trustee shall contain a statement that such firm is independent.

Section 10.06 *Payments Due on Saturdays, Sundays and Holidays.* If the date of maturity of interest on or Principal of the Securities of any series or the date fixed for redemption or repayment of any such Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or Principal need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the date of maturity or the date fixed for redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such date.

Section 10.07 *Conflict of Any Provision of Indenture with Trust Indenture Act of 1939.* If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with another provision incorporated in this Indenture by operation of Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, such incorporated provision shall control.

Section 10.08 *New York Law to Govern.* This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract under the laws of the State of New York, and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of such State.

Section 10.09 *Counterparts.* This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original; but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 10.10 *Effect of Headings.* The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

ARTICLE 11  
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

Section 11.01 *Applicability of Article*. The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to the Securities of any series which are redeemable before their maturity except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series.

Section 11.02 *Notice of Redemption; Partial Redemptions*. Notice of redemption to the Holders of Securities of any series to be redeemed as a whole or in part at the option of the Issuer shall be given by mailing notice of such redemption by first class mail, postage prepaid, at least 30 days and not more than 60 days prior to the date fixed for redemption to such Holders of Securities of such series at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the registry books. Any notice which is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the Holder receives the notice. Failure to give notice by mail, or any defect in the notice to the Holder of any Security of a series designated for redemption as a whole or in part shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Security of such series.

The notice of redemption to each such Holder shall specify the CUSIP numbers of such Securities to be redeemed, the Principal amount of each Security of such series held by such Holder to be redeemed, the date fixed for redemption, the redemption price, the place or places of payment, that payment will be made upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in such notice and that on and after said date interest thereon or on the portions thereof to be redeemed will cease to accrue. In case any Security of a series is to be redeemed in part only the notice of redemption shall state the portion of the Principal amount thereof to be redeemed, the method the Trustee shall use to determine such Securities to be redeemed as specified in the last paragraph of this Section 11.02, if applicable, and shall state that on and after the date fixed for redemption, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in Principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

The notice of redemption of Securities of any series to be redeemed at the option of the Issuer shall be given by the Issuer or, at the Issuer's written request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Issuer.

By 11:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the redemption date specified in the notice of redemption given as provided in this Section, the Issuer will deposit with the Trustee or with one or more paying agents (or, if the Issuer is acting as its own paying agent, set aside, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 3.03) an amount of money sufficient to redeem on the redemption date all the Securities of such series so called for redemption at the appropriate redemption price, together with accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption. If less than all the outstanding Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Issuer will deliver to the Trustee at least 70 days (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the date fixed for redemption an Officers' Certificate stating the aggregate Principal amount of Securities to be redeemed.

In the case of the redemption of all of the Securities of a series outstanding, the Issuer shall notify the Trustee in writing of the redemption date 45 days (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the redemption date.

If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Trustee shall select, pro rata or by lot or in such manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair, Securities of such series to be redeemed in whole or in part. Securities of a series may be redeemed in part in multiples equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series or any multiple thereof. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Issuer in writing of the Securities of such series selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities of such series selected for partial redemption, the Principal amount thereof to be redeemed. For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities of any series shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the Principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 11.03 *Payment of Securities Called for Redemption.* If notice of redemption has been given as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption, and on and after said date (unless the Issuer shall default in the payment of such Securities at the redemption price, together with interest accrued to said date) interest on the Securities or portions of Securities so called for redemption shall cease to accrue and, except as provided in Section 5.05 and 9.04, such Securities shall cease from and after the date fixed for redemption to be entitled to any benefit or security under this Indenture, and the Holders thereof shall have no right in respect of such Securities except the right to receive the redemption price thereof and unpaid interest to the date fixed for redemption. On presentation and surrender of such Securities at a place of payment specified in said notice, said Securities or the specified portions thereof shall be paid and redeemed by the Issuer at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption; provided that any semiannual payment of interest becoming due on the date fixed for redemption shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities registered as such on the relevant record date subject to the terms and provisions of Section 2.07 hereof.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the Principal shall, until paid or duly provided for, bear interest from the date fixed for redemption at the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security) borne by the Security.

Upon presentation of any Security redeemed in part only, the Issuer shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to or on the order of the Holder thereof, at the expense of the Issuer, a new Security or Securities of such series, of authorized denominations, in Principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented, pursuant to Section 2.04, 2.05 and 2.06.

Section 11.04 *Exclusion of Certain Securities from Eligibility for Selection for Redemption.* Securities shall be excluded from eligibility for selection for redemption if they are identified by registration and certificate number in a written statement signed by an authorized officer of the Issuer and delivered to the Trustee at least 40 days prior to the last date on which notice of redemption may be given as being owned of record and beneficially by, and not pledged or hypothecated by either (a) the Issuer or (b) an entity specifically identified in such written statement directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer.

Section 11.05 *Conversion Arrangement On Call For Redemption.* In connection with any redemption of Securities, the Issuer shall deposit the amount due in connection with such redemption as required by Section 11.02 or it may arrange for the purchase and conversion of any Securities called for redemption by an agreement with one or more investment bankers or other purchasers to purchase such Securities and to make the deposit required of it by Section 11.02 on its behalf by paying to the Trustee or the Paying Agent in trust for the Securityholders, on or before 10:00 a.m. New York time on the redemption date, an amount no less than the redemption price, together with interest, if any, accrued to the redemption date of such Securities, in immediately available funds. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Article 11, the obligation of the Issuer to pay the redemption price of such Securities, including all accrued interest, if any, shall be deemed to be satisfied and discharged to the extent such amount is so paid by such purchasers. If such an agreement is entered into, any Securities not duly surrendered for conversion by the Holders thereof may, at the option of the Issuer, be deemed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, acquired by such purchasers from such Holders and (notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in Article 12) surrendered by such purchasers for conversion, all as of immediately prior to the close of business on the last day on which Securities of such series called for redemption may be converted in accordance with this Indenture and the terms of such Securities, subject to payment of the above amount aforesaid. The Trustee or the Paying Agent shall hold and pay to the Securityholders whose Securities are selected for redemption any such amount paid to it in the same manner as it would monies deposited with it by the Issuer for the redemption of Securities. Without the Trustee's and the Paying Agent's prior written consent, no arrangement between the Issuer and such purchasers for the purchase and conversion of any Securities shall increase or otherwise affect any of the powers, duties, responsibilities or obligations of the Trustee as set forth in this Indenture, and the Issuer agrees to indemnify the Trustee from, and hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense arising out of or in connection with any such arrangement for the purchase and conversion of any Securities between the Issuer and such purchasers, including the costs and expenses incurred by the Trustee and the Paying Agent in the defense of any claim or liability arising out of or in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers, duties, responsibilities or obligations under this Indenture.

ARTICLE 12  
CONVERSION OF SECURITIES

Section 12.01 *Applicability of Article*. Securities of any series which are convertible into Capital Stock at the option of the Securityholder shall be convertible in accordance with their terms and (unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article. Each reference in this Article 12 to “a Security” or “the Securities” refers to the Securities of the particular series that is convertible into Capital Stock. Each reference in this Article to “Capital Stock” into which Securities of any series are convertible refers to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible in accordance with their terms (as specified as contemplated by Section 2.03). If more than one series of Securities with conversion privileges are outstanding at any time, the provisions of this Article 12 shall be applied separately to each such series.

Section 12.02 *Right of Securityholders to Convert Securities*. Subject to and upon compliance with the terms of the Securities and the provisions of Section 11.05 and this Article 12, at the option of the Holder thereof, any Security of any series of any authorized denomination, or any portion of the Principal amount thereof which is \$1,000 or any integral multiple of \$1,000, may, at any time during the period specified in the Securities of such series, or in case such Security or portion thereof shall have been called for redemption, then in respect of such Security or portion thereof until and including, but not after (unless the Issuer shall default in payment due upon the redemption thereof) the close of business on the Business Day prior to the date fixed for redemption except that in the case of redemption at the option of the Securityholder, if specified in the terms of such Securities, such right shall terminate upon receipt of written notice of the exercise of such option, be converted into duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable shares of Capital Stock, as specified in such Security, at the conversion rate for each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities (such initial conversion rate reflecting an initial conversion price specified in such Security) in effect on the conversion date, or, in case an adjustment in the conversion rate has taken place pursuant to the provisions of Section 12.05, then at the applicable conversion rate as so adjusted, upon surrender of the Security or Securities, the Principal amount of which is so to be converted, to the Issuer at any time during usual business hours at the office or agency to be maintained by it in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.02, accompanied by a written notice of election to convert as provided in Section 12.03 and, if so required by the Issuer and the Trustee, by a written instrument or instruments of transfer in form satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee duly executed by the registered Holder or his attorney duly authorized in writing. All Securities surrendered for conversion shall, if surrendered to the Issuer or any conversion agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation and cancelled by it, or shall, if surrendered to the Trustee, be cancelled by it, as provided in Section 2.10.

The initial conversion price or conversion rate in respect of a series of Securities shall be as specified in the Securities of such series. The conversion price or conversion rate will be subject to adjustment on the terms set forth in Section 12.05 or such other or different terms, if any, as may be specified by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series. Provisions of this Indenture that apply to conversion of all of a Security also apply to conversion of a portion of it.

Section 12.03 *Issuance of Shares of Capital Stock on Conversion* As promptly as practicable after the surrender, as herein provided, of any Security or Securities for conversion, the Issuer shall deliver or cause to be delivered at its said office or agency to or upon the written order of the Holder of the Security or Securities so surrendered a certificate or certificates representing the number of duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable shares of Capital Stock into which such Security or Securities may be converted in accordance with the terms thereof and the provisions of this Article 12. Prior to delivery of such certificate or certificates, the Issuer shall require a written notice at its said office or agency from the Holder of the Security or Securities so surrendered stating that the Holder irrevocably elects to convert such Security or Securities, or, if less than the entire Principal amount thereof is to be converted, stating the portion thereof to be converted. Such notice shall also state the name or names (with address and social security or other taxpayer identification number) in which said certificate or certificates are to be issued. Such conversion shall be deemed to have been made at the time that such Security or Securities shall have been surrendered for conversion and such notice shall have been received by the Issuer or the Trustee, the rights of the Holder of such Security or Securities as a Securityholder shall cease at such time, the person or persons entitled to receive the shares of Capital Stock upon conversion of such Security or Securities shall be treated for all purposes as having become the record holder or holders of such shares of Capital Stock at such time and such conversion shall be at the conversion rate in effect at such time. In the case of any Security of any series which is converted in part only, upon such conversion, the Issuer shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder thereof, as requested by such Holder, a new Security or Securities of such series of authorized denominations in aggregate Principal amount equal to the unconverted portion of such Security.

If the last day on which a Security may be converted is not a Business Day in a place where a conversion agent is located, the Security may be surrendered to that conversion agent on the next succeeding day that is a Business Day.

The Issuer will not be required to deliver certificates for shares of Capital Stock upon conversion while its stock transfer books are closed for a meeting of shareholders or for the payment of dividends or for any other purpose, but certificates for shares of Capital Stock shall be delivered as soon as the stock transfer books shall again be opened.

Section 12.04 *No Payment or Adjustment for Interest or Dividends.* Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series, Securities surrendered for conversion during the period from the close of business on any regular record date (or special record date for payment of defaulted interest) next preceding any interest payment date to the opening of business on such interest payment date (except Securities called for redemption on a redemption date within such period) when surrendered for conversion must be accompanied by payment of an amount equal to the interest thereon which the registered Holder is to receive on such interest payment date. Payment of interest shall be made, as of such interest payment date or such date, as the case may be, to the Holder of record of the Securities as of such regular, or special record date, as applicable. Except where Securities surrendered for conversion must be accompanied by payment as described above, no interest on converted Securities will be payable by the Issuer on any interest payment date subsequent to the date of conversion. No other payment or adjustment for interest or dividends is to be made upon conversion. Notwithstanding the foregoing, upon conversion of any Original Issue Discount Security, the fixed number of shares of Capital Stock into which such Security is convertible delivered by the Issuer to the Holder thereof shall be applied, first, to pay the accrued original issue discount attributable to the period from the date of issuance to the date of conversion of such Security, and, second, to pay the balance of the Principal amount of such Security.

Section 12.05 *Adjustment of Conversion Rate.* Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series, the conversion rate for Securities in effect at any time shall be subject to adjustment as follows:

(a) In case the Issuer shall (i) declare a dividend or make a distribution on the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible in shares of its Capital Stock, (ii) subdivide the outstanding shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible into a greater number of shares, (iii) combine the outstanding shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible into a smaller number of shares or (iv) issue by reclassification of the shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible (including any such reclassification in connection with a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation) any shares, the conversion rate for the Securities of such series in effect at the time of the record subdivision, combination or reclassification, shall be proportionately adjusted so that the Holder of any Security of such series surrendered for conversion after such time shall be entitled to receive the number and kind of shares which he would have owned or have been entitled to receive had such Security been converted immediately prior to such time. Similar adjustments shall be made whenever any event listed above shall occur.

(b) In case the Issuer shall fix a record date for the issuance of rights or warrants to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible entitling them (for a period expiring within 45 days after such record date) to subscribe for or purchase shares of such class of Capital Stock (or securities convertible into shares of such class of Capital Stock) at a price per share (or, in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, having a conversion price per share, after adding thereto the exercise price, computed on the basis of the maximum number of shares of such class of Capital Stock issuable upon conversion of such convertible securities, per share of such class of Capital Stock, so issuable) less than the current market price per share of such class of Capital Stock (as defined in subsection (e) below) on the date on which such issuance was declared or otherwise announced by the Issuer (the "**Determination Date**"), the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities shall be convertible after such record date shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which such Principal amount of Securities was convertible immediately prior to such record date by a fraction, of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock outstanding on the Determination Date plus the number of additional shares of such class of Capital Stock offered for subscription or purchase (or in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, the aggregate number of additional shares of such class of Capital Stock into which the convertible securities so offered are initially convertible), and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock outstanding on the Determination Date plus the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock obtained by dividing the aggregate offering price of the total number of shares so offered (or, in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, the aggregate initial conversion price of the convertible securities so offered, after adding thereto the aggregate exercise price of such rights or warrants computed on the basis of the maximum number of shares of such class of Capital Stock issuable upon conversion of such convertible securities) by such current market price. Shares of such class of Capital Stock of the Issuer owned by or held for the account of the Issuer shall not be deemed outstanding for the purpose of any such computation. Such adjustment shall be made successively whenever such a record date is fixed; and to the extent that shares of such class of Capital Stock are not delivered (or securities convertible into shares of such class of Capital Stock are not delivered) after the expiration of such rights or warrants (or, in the case of rights or warrants to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock once exercised, the expiration of the conversion right of such securities) the conversion rate shall be readjusted to the conversion rate which would then be in effect had the adjustments made upon the issuance of such rights or warrants (or securities convertible into shares) been made upon the basis of delivery of only the number of shares actually delivered. In the event that such rights or warrants are not so issued, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to be the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such record date had not been fixed.

(c) In case the Issuer shall fix a record date for the making of a distribution to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible (including any such distribution made in connection with a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation) of evidences of its indebtedness or assets (excluding any cash dividends paid from retained earnings and dividends payable in Capital Stock for which adjustment is made pursuant to subsection (a) above or (d) below) or subscription rights or warrants (excluding subscription rights or warrants to purchase the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible), the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities of such series shall be convertible after such record date shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which such Principal amount of Securities was convertible immediately prior to such record date by a fraction, of which the numerator shall be the fair market value of the assets of the Issuer, after deducting therefrom all liabilities of the Issuer and all preferences (including accrued but unpaid dividends) in respect of classes of Capital Stock having a preference with respect to the assets of the Issuer over such class of Capital Stock (all as determined by the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be conclusive, and described in a certificate signed by chairman of the Issuer's Board of Directors, its president, any vice president, its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary, filed with the Trustee and each conversion agent) on such record date, and of which the denominator shall be such fair market value after deducting therefrom such liabilities and preferences, less the fair market value (as determined by the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be conclusive, and described in a statement filed with the Trustee and each conversion agent) of the assets or evidences of indebtedness, so distributed or of such subscription rights or warrants applicable, so distributed. Such adjustment shall be made successively whenever such a record date is fixed; and in the event that such distribution is not so made, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such record date had not been fixed.

(d) In case the Issuer shall, by dividend or otherwise, distribute to all holders of its Capital Stock cash (excluding any dividend or distribution in connection with the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Issuer, whether voluntary or involuntary), then, in such case, unless the Issuer elects to reserve such cash for distribution to the Holders of the Securities upon the conversion of the Securities so that any such Holder converting Securities will receive upon such conversion, in addition to the shares of Capital Stock to which such Holder is entitled, the amount of cash which such Holder would have received if such Holder had, immediately prior to the record date for such distribution of cash, converted its Securities into Capital Stock, the conversion rate shall be adjusted so that the same shall equal the rate determined by multiplying the conversion rate in effect immediately prior to the record date by a fraction of which the denominator shall be the current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in Section 12.05(e) on the record date less the amount of cash so distributed (and not excluded as provided above) applicable to one share of Capital Stock and the numerator shall be such current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in Section 12.05(e)), such adjustment to be effective immediately prior to the opening of business on the day following the record date; provided, however, that in the event the portion of the cash so distributed applicable to one share of Capital Stock is equal to or greater than the current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in Section 12.05(e) on the record date, in lieu of the foregoing adjustment, adequate provision shall be made so that each Securityholder shall have the right to receive upon conversion the amount of cash such Holder would have received had such Holder converted each Security on the record date. If such dividend or distribution is not so paid or made, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to be the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such dividend or distribution had not been declared.

(e) For the purpose of any computation under subsections (b) and (d) above and Section 12.06, the current market price per share of the Capital Stock on any date as of which such price is to be computed shall mean the average of the Closing Prices for the 30 consecutive Business Days commencing 45 Business Days before such date.

(f) No adjustment in the conversion rate shall be required unless such adjustment would require a cumulative increase or decrease of at least 1% in such rate *provided, however*, that any adjustments which by reason of this subsection (f) are not required to be made shall be carried forward and taken into account in any subsequent adjustment; and *provided further*, that adjustments shall be required and made in accordance with the provisions of this Article 12 (other than this subsection (f)) not later than such time as may be required in order to preserve the tax-free nature of a States income tax purposes to the Holders of Securities or the class of Capital Stock into which such Securities are convertible. All calculations under this Article 12 shall be made to the nearest cent or to the nearest one-thousandth of a share, as the case may be. Anything in this Section 12.05 to the contrary notwithstanding, the Issuer shall be entitled to make such adjustments in the conversion rate, in addition to those required by this Section 12.05, as it in its discretion shall determine to be advisable in order that any stock dividend, subdivision of shares, distribution of rights to purchase stock or securities, or distribution of securities convertible into or exchangeable for stock hereafter made by the Issuer to its shareholders shall not be taxable for United States income tax purposes.

(g) Whenever the conversion rate is adjusted, as herein provided, the Issuer shall promptly file with the Trustee and with the office or agency maintained by the Issuer for the conversion of Securities of such series pursuant to Section 3.02, a certificate of a firm of independent public accountants of recognized national standing selected by the Board of Directors (who may be the regular accountants employed by the Issuer) setting forth the conversion rate after such adjustment and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment and a computation thereof. Such certificate shall be conclusive evidence of the correctness of such adjustment. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be under any duty or responsibility with respect to any such certificate or any facts or computations set forth therein, except to exhibit said certificate from time to time to any Securityholder of such series desiring to inspect the same. The Issuer shall promptly cause a notice setting forth the adjusted conversion rate to be mailed to the Holders of Securities of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the register of the Issuer.



(h) In the event that at any time, as a result of shares of any other class of Capital Stock becoming issuable in exchange or substitution for or in lieu of shares of the class of Capital Stock into which such Securities are convertible or as a result of an adjustment made pursuant to subsection (a) above, the Holder of any Security of such series thereafter surrendered for conversion shall become entitled to receive any shares of the Issuer other than shares of the class of Capital Stock into which the Issuer of such series are convertible, thereafter the number of such other shares so receivable upon conversion of any Security shall be subject to adjustment from time to time in a manner and on terms as nearly equivalent as practicable to the provisions with respect to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible contained in subsections (a) to (f), inclusive, above, and the provisions of this Article 12 with respect to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible shall apply on like terms to any such other shares.

(i) The conversion rate with respect to any Original Issue Discount Security, the terms of which provide for convertibility, shall not be adjusted during the term of such Original Issue Discount Security for accrued original issue discount.

(j) In the event that the Securities of any series are convertible into more than one class of Capital Stock, the provisions of this Section 12.05 shall apply separately to events affecting each such class.

Section 12.06 *No Fractional Shares to Be Issued*. No fractional shares of Capital Stock shall be issued upon conversions of Securities. If more than one Security of any series shall be surrendered for conversion at one time by the same Holder, the number of full shares which shall be issuable upon conversion thereof shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series (or specified portions thereof to the extent permitted hereby) so surrendered. Instead of a fraction of a share of Capital Stock which would otherwise be issuable upon conversion of any Security or Securities (or specified portions thereof), the Issuer shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction of a share in an amount equal to the same fractional interest of the current market price (as defined in Section 12.05) per share of Capital Stock on the Business Day next preceding the day of conversion.

Section 12.07 *Preservation of Conversion Rights Upon Consolidation, Merger, Sale or Conveyance*. In case of any consolidation of the Issuer with, or merger of the Issuer into, any other corporation (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation), or in the case of any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer, the corporation formed by such consolidation or the corporation into which the Issuer shall have been merged or the corporation which shall have acquired such assets, as the case may be, shall execute and deliver to the Trustee, a supplemental indenture, subject to the provisions of Article 7 and 8 as they relate to supplemental indentures, providing that the Holder of each Security then Outstanding of a series which was convertible into Capital Stock shall have the right thereafter to convert such Security into the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property, including cash, receivable upon such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer by a holder of the number of shares of Capital Stock of the Issuer into which such Securities might have been converted immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer. Such supplemental indenture shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as then in effect and shall provide for adjustments which shall be as nearly equivalent as may be practicable to the adjustments provided for in this Article 12. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be under any responsibility to determine the correctness of any provision contained in any such supplemental indenture relating either to the kind or amount of shares of stock or other securities or property receivable by Securityholders upon the conversion of their Securities after any such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer, or to any adjustment to be made with respect there to and, subject to the provisions of Article 5, may accept as conclusive evidence of the correctness of any such provisions, and shall be protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel with respect thereto. If in the case of any such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer, the stock or other securities and property receivable by a Holder of the Securities includes stock or other securities and property of a corporation other than the successor or purchasing corporation, then such supplemental indenture shall also be executed by such other corporation and shall contain such additional provisions to protect the interests of the Holders of the Securities as the Board of Directors shall reasonably consider necessary. The above provisions of this Section 12.07 shall similarly apply to successive consolidations, mergers, sales or transfers.

Section 12.08 *Notice to Security Holders of a Series Prior to Taking Certain Types of Action* With respect to the Securities of any series, in case:

(a) the Issuer shall authorize the issuance to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible of rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase shares of its Capital Stock or of any other right;

(b) the Issuer shall authorize the distribution to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible of evidences of its indebtedness or assets (except for the exclusions with respect to certain dividends set forth in Section 12.05(c));

(c) of any subdivision, combination or reclassification of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible or of any consolidation or merger to which the Issuer is a party and for which approval by the shareholders of the Issuer is required, or of the sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer; or

(d) of the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Issuer;

then the Issuer shall cause to be filed with the Trustee and at the office or agency maintained for the purpose of conversion of Securities of such series pursuant to Section 3.02, and shall cause to be mailed to the Holders of Securities of such series, at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the register of the Issuer, at least 10 days prior to the applicable record date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (i) the date as of which the holders of such class of Capital Stock to be entitled to receive any such rights, warrants or distribution are to be determined, or (ii) the date on which any such subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of record of such class of Capital Stock shall be entitled to exchange their Capital Stock of such class for securities or other property, if any, deliverable upon such subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action. The failure to give the notice required by this Section 12.08 or any defect therein shall not affect the legality or validity of any distribution, right, warrant, subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action, or the vote upon any of the foregoing. Such notice shall also be published by and at the expense of the Issuer not later than the aforesaid filing date at least once in an Authorized Newspaper.

Section 12.09 *Covenant to Reserve Shares for Issuance on Conversion of Securities* The Issuer covenants that at all times it will reserve and keep available out of each class of its authorized Capital Stock, free from preemptive rights, solely for the purpose of issue upon conversion of Securities of any series as herein provided, such number of shares of Capital Stock of such class as shall then be issuable upon the conversion of all Outstanding Securities of such series. The Issuer covenants that an shares of Capital Stock which shall be so issuable shall, when issued or delivered, be duly and validly issued shares of the class of authorized Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible, and shall be fully paid and nonassessable, free of all liens and charges and not subject to preemptive rights and that, upon conversion, the appropriate capital stock accounts of the Issuer will be duly credited.

Section 12.10 *Compliance with Governmental Requirements*. The Issuer covenants that if any shares of Capital Stock required to be reserved for purposes of conversion of Securities hereunder require registration or listing with or approval of any governmental authority under any Federal or State law, pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any national or regional securities exchange on which such Capital Stock is listed at the time of delivery of any shares of such Capital Stock, before such shares may be issued upon conversion, the Issuer will use reasonable efforts to cause such shares to be duly registered, listed or approved, as the case may be.

Section 12.11 *Payment of Taxes Upon Certificates for Shares Issued Upon Conversion*. The issuance of certificates for shares of Capital Stock upon the conversion of Securities shall be made without charge to the converting Securityholders for any tax (including, without limitation, all documentary and stamp taxes) in respect of the issuance and delivery of such certificates, and such certificates shall be issued in the respective names of, or in such names as may be directed by, the Holders of the Securities converted; provided, however, that the Issuer shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issuance and delivery of any such certificate in a name other than that of the Holder of the Security converted, and the Issuer shall not be required to issue or deliver such certificates unless or until the person or persons requesting the issuance thereof shall have paid to the Issuer the amount of such tax or shall have established to the satisfaction of the Issuer that such tax has been paid.

Section 12.12 *Trustee's Duties with Respect to Conversion Provisions*. The Trustee and any conversion agent shall not at any time be under any duty or responsibility to any Securityholder to determine whether any facts exist which may require any adjustment of the conversion rate or conversion price, or with respect to the nature or extent of any such adjustment when made, or with respect to the method employed, or herein or in any supplemental indenture provided to be employed, in making the same. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be accountable with respect to the registration under securities laws, listing, validity or value (or the kind or amount) of any shares of Capital Stock, or of any other securities or property, which may at any time be issued or delivered upon the conversion of any Security; and neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent makes any representation with respect thereto. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be responsible for any failure of the Issuer to make any cash payment or to issue, transfer or deliver any shares of stock or stock certificates or other securities or property upon the surrender of any Security for the purpose of conversion; and the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Article 5, and any conversion agent shall not be responsible for any failure of the Issuer to comply with any of the covenants of the Issuer contained in this Article 12.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, as of the first date written above.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., as Issuer

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

●, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**FORM OF NOTE**

UNLESS AND UNTIL IT IS EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR SECURITIES IN DEFINITIVE REGISTERED FORM, THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE TRANSFERRED EXCEPT AS A WHOLE BY THE DEPOSITARY TO A NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR BY A NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY TO THE DEPOSITARY OR ANOTHER NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR BY THE DEPOSITARY OR ANY SUCH NOMINEE TO A SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE OF SUCH SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY. UNLESS THIS SECURITY IS PRESENTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF THE DEPOSITARY TRUST COMPANY, A NEW YORK CORPORATION (“**DTC**”), TO THE COMPANY OR ITS AGENT FOR REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER, EXCHANGE OR PAYMENT, AND ANY SECURITY ISSUED IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF CEDE & CO. OR IN SUCH OTHER NAME AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC (AND ANY PAYMENT IS MADE TO CEDE & CO. OR TO SUCH OTHER ENTITY AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL INASMUCH AS THE REGISTERED OWNER HEREOF, CEDE & CO., HAS AN INTEREST HEREIN.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.  
● % Senior Note Due ●

No. ● CUSIP No.: ●  
\$ ●

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Issuer**”, which term includes any successor corporation), for value received promises to pay to CEDE & CO. or its registered assigns, the principal sum of ● on ●.

Interest Payment Dates: ● and ● (each, an “**Interest Payment Date**”), commencing on ●. Interest Record Dates: ● and ● (each, an “**Interest Record Date**”).

Reference is made to the further provisions of this Security contained herein, which will for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Security to be signed manually or by facsimile by its duly authorized officer.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

This is one of the series designated herein and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

•, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory



**(REVERSE OF SECURITY)**  
**MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.**  
**●% Senior Note Due ●**

1. Interest.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “Issuer”), promises to pay interest on the Principal amount of this Security at the rate per annum shown above. Cash interest on the Securities will accrue from the most recent date to which interest has been paid or, if no interest has been paid, from ●. The Issuer will pay interest semi-annually in arrears on each Interest Payment Date, commencing ●. Interest will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

The Issuer shall pay interest on overdue Principal from time to time on demand at the rate borne by the Securities and on overdue installments of interest (without regard to any applicable grace periods) to the extent lawful.

2. Method of Payment.

The Issuer shall pay interest on the Securities (except defaulted interest) to the persons who are the registered Holders at the close of business on the Interest Record Date immediately preceding the Interest Payment Date notwithstanding any transfer or exchange of such Security subsequent to such Interest Record Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date. Holders must surrender Securities to the Trustee to collect Principal payments. The Issuer shall pay Principal and interest in money of the United States that at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts (“**U.S. Legal Tender**”). However, the payments of interest, and any portion of the Principal (other than interest payable at maturity or on any redemption or repayment date or the final payment of Principal) shall be made by the Paying Agent, upon receipt from the Issuer of immediately available funds by 11:00 a.m., New York City time (or such other time as may be agreed to between the Issuer and the Paying Agent or the Issuer), directly to a Holder (by Federal funds wire transfer or otherwise) if the Holder has delivered written instructions to the Trustee 15 days prior to such payment date requesting that such payment will be so made and designating the bank account to which such payments shall be so made and in the case of payments of Principal surrenders the same to the Trustee in exchange for a Security or Securities aggregating the same principal amount as the unredeemed Principal amount of the Securities surrendered.

3. Paying Agent.

Initially, ● (the “**Trustee**”) will act as Paying Agent. The Issuer may change any Paying Agent without notice to the Holders.

4. Indenture.

The Issuer issued the Securities under an Indenture, dated as of ● (the “**Indenture**”), between the Issuer and the Trustee. Capitalized terms herein are used as defined in the Indenture unless otherwise defined herein. The terms of the Securities include those stated in the Indenture and those made part of the Indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. Sections 77aaa-77bbb) (the “**TIA**”), as in effect on the date of the Indenture until such time as the Indenture is qualified under the TIA, and thereafter as in effect on the date on which the Indenture is qualified under the TIA. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Securities are subject to all such terms, and Holders of Securities are referred to the Indenture and the TIA for a statement of them. To the extent the terms of the Indenture and this Security are inconsistent, the terms of the Indenture shall govern.

5. Denominations; Transfer; Exchange.

The Securities are in registered form, without coupons, in denominations of \$1,000 and multiples of \$1,000. A Holder shall register the transfer of or exchange Securities in accordance with the Indenture. The Issuer may require a Holder, among other things, to furnish appropriate endorsements and transfer documents and to pay certain transfer taxes or similar governmental charges payable in connection therewith as permitted by the Indenture. The Issuer need not issue, authenticate, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities or portions thereof for a period of fifteen (15) days before such series is selected for redemption, nor need the Issuer register the transfer or exchange of any security selected for redemption in whole or in part.

6. Persons Deemed Owners.

The registered Holder of a Security shall be treated as the owner of it for all purposes.

7. Unclaimed Funds.

If funds for the payment of Principal or interest remain unclaimed for two years, the Trustee and the Paying Agent will repay the funds to the Issuer at its written request. After that, all liability of the Trustee and such Paying Agent with respect to such funds shall cease.

8. Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.

The Issuer may be discharged from its obligations under the Securities and under the Indenture with respect to the Securities except for certain provisions thereof, and may be discharged from obligations to comply with certain covenants contained in the Securities and in the Indenture with respect to the Securities, in each case upon satisfaction of certain conditions specified in the Indenture.

9. Amendment; Supplement; Waiver.

Subject to certain exceptions, the Securities and the provisions of the Indenture relating to the Securities may be amended or supplemented with the written consent of the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding, and any existing Default or Event of Default or compliance with certain provisions may be waived with the consent of the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding. Without notice to or consent of any Holder, the parties thereto may amend or supplement the Indenture and the Securities to, among other things, cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency, provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities or comply with any requirements of the Commission in connection with the qualification of the Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act, or make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Holder of a Security.

10. Defaults and Remedies.

If an Event of Default (other than certain bankruptcy Events of Default with respect to the Issuer) occurs and is continuing, the Trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate Principal amount of Securities then outstanding may declare all of the Securities to be due and payable immediately in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. If a bankruptcy Event of Default with respect to the Issuer occurs and is continuing, all the Securities shall be immediately due and payable immediately in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture without any notice or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder. Holders of Securities may not enforce the Indenture or the Securities except as provided in the Indenture. The Trustee is not obligated to enforce the Indenture or the Securities unless it has received indemnity satisfactory to it. The Indenture permits, subject to certain limitations therein provided, Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding to direct the Trustee in its exercise of any trust or power. The Trustee may withhold from Holders of Securities notice of certain continuing Defaults or Events of Default if it determines that withholding notice is in their interest.

11. Conversion.

Reference is made to the Indenture, including, without limitation, provisions giving the Holder of this Security the right to convert this Security into Capital Stock of the Issuer on the terms and subject to the limitations as more fully specified in the Indenture. The initial conversion rate for this Security is •. This conversion rate is subject to modification as provided in the Indenture. Such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

12. Trustee Dealings with Issuer.

The Trustee under the Indenture, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Issuer as if it were not the Trustee.

13. No Recourse Against Others.

No stockholder, director, officer, employee or incorporator, as such, of the Issuer or any successor Person thereof shall have any liability for any obligation under the Securities or the Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. Each Holder of a Security by accepting a Security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for the issuance of the Securities.

14. Authentication.

This Security shall not be valid until the Trustee manually signs the certificate of authentication on this Security.

15. Abbreviations and Defined Terms.

Customary abbreviations may be used in the name of a Holder of a Security or an assignee, such as: TEN COM (= tenants in common), TEN ENT (= tenants by the entireties), JT TEN (= joint tenants with right of survivorship and not as tenants in common), CUST (= Custodian), and U/G/M/A (= Uniform Gifts to Minors Act).

16. CUSIP Numbers.

Pursuant to a recommendation promulgated by the Committee on Uniform Security Identification Procedures, the Issuer has caused CUSIP numbers to be printed on the Securities as a convenience to the Holders of the Securities. No representation is made as to the accuracy of such numbers as printed on the Securities and reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed hereon.

17. Governing Law.

The laws of the State of New York shall govern the Indenture and this Security thereof.

**ASSIGNMENT FORM**

I or we assign and transfer this Security to

\_\_\_\_\_

(Print or type name, address and zip code of assignee or transferee)

\_\_\_\_\_

(Insert Social Security or other identifying number of assignee or transferee)

and irrevocably appoint \_\_\_\_\_ agent to transfer this Security on the books of the Issuer. The agent may substitute another to act for him.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_

(Signed exactly as name appears on the other side of this Security)

Signature Guarantee:

\_\_\_\_\_

Participant in a recognized Signature Guarantee Medallion Program (or other signature guarantor program reasonably acceptable to the Trustee)

---

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., as Issuer

and

•, as Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of •

Subordinated Debt Securities

---

---

CROSS REFERENCE SHEET<sup>1</sup>

Between

Provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and the Indenture to be dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ between MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC. and \_\_\_\_\_, as Trustee:

Section of the Act	Section of Indenture
310(a)(1) and (2)	5.08
310(a)(3) and (4)	Inapplicable
310(b)	5.09(a), (b) and (d)
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	Inapplicable
311(b)	Inapplicable
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	3.05
312(b)	3.05
312(c)	4.02(c)
313(a)	5.12
313(b)(1)	5.12
313(b)(2)	5.12
313(c)	5.12
313(d)	5.12
314(a)	3.06
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)(1) and (2)	10.05
314(c)(3)	Inapplicable
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	10.05
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a), (c) and (d)	5.01
315(b)	4.11
315(e)	4.12
316(a)(1)	4.09
316(a)(2)	Not required
316(a) (last sentence)	6.04
316(b)	4.07
317(a)	4.02
317(b)	3.03(a) and (b)
318(a)	10.07

<sup>1</sup> This Cross Reference Sheet is not part of the Indenture.

Table of Contents  
(continued)

		Page
ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS		1
Section 1.01	Certain Terms Defined	1
ARTICLE 2 SECURITIES		8
Section 2.01	Forms Generally	8
Section 2.02	Form of Trustee's Certification of Authentication	9
Section 2.03	Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	9
Section 2.04	Authentication and Delivery of Securities	10
Section 2.05	Execution of Securities	12
Section 2.06	Certificate of Authentication	12
Section 2.07	Denomination and Date of Securities; Payments of Interest	12
Section 2.08	Registration, Transfer and Exchange	13
Section 2.09	Mutilated, Defaced, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	15
Section 2.10	Cancellation of Securities; Destruction Thereof	15
Section 2.11	Temporary Securities	15
Section 2.12	Computation of Interest	16
Section 2.13	CUSIP Numbers	16
ARTICLE 3 COVENANTS OF THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE		16
Section 3.01	Payment of Principal and Interest	16
Section 3.02	Offices for Payments, etc	16
Section 3.03	Paying Agents	17
Section 3.04	Certificate of the Issuer	17
Section 3.05	List of Securityholders	18
Section 3.06	Reports by the Issuer	18
Section 3.07	Corporate Existence	18
Section 3.08	Restrictions on Mergers, Sales and Consolidations	18
Section 3.09	Further Assurances	18
ARTICLE 4 REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT		19
Section 4.01	Event of Default Defined; Acceleration of Maturity; Waiver of Default	19
Section 4.02	Collection of Indebtedness by Trustee; Trustee May Prove Debt	20
Section 4.03	Application of Proceeds	22
Section 4.04	Suits for Enforcement	22
Section 4.05	Restoration of Rights on Abandonment of Proceedings	23
Section 4.06	Limitations on Suits by Securityholder	23
Section 4.07	Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Institute Certain Suits	23
Section 4.08	Powers and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver of Default	23
Section 4.09	Control by Securityholders	24
Section 4.10	Waiver of Past Defaults	24
Section 4.11	Trustee to Give Notice of Default, But May Withhold in Certain Circumstances	24
Section 4.12	Right of Court to Require Filing of Undertaking to Pay Costs	24

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE 5 CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	25
Section 5.01    Duties and Responsibilities of the Trustee	25
Section 5.02    Certain Rights of the Trustee	26
Section 5.03    Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals, Disposition of Securities or Application of Proceeds Thereof	27
Section 5.04    Trustee and Agents May Hold Securities; Collections, etc	27
Section 5.05    Monies Held by Trustee	27
Section 5.06    Compensation and Indemnification of Trustee and Its Prior Claim	27
Section 5.07    Right of Trustee to Rely on Officers' Certificate, etc	28
Section 5.08    Persons Eligible for Appointment as Trustee	28
Section 5.09    Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor Trustee	28
Section 5.10    Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	29
Section 5.11    Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business of Trustee	30
Section 5.12    Reports to the Trustee	30
ARTICLE 6 CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	31
Section 6.01    Evidence of Action Taken by Securityholders	31
Section 6.02    Proof of Execution of Instruments and of Holding of Securities; Record Date	31
Section 6.03    Holders to be Treated as Owners	31
Section 6.04    Securities Owned by Issuer Deemed Not Outstanding	31
Section 6.05    Right of Revocation of Action Taken	32
ARTICLE 7 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	32
Section 7.01    Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders	32
Section 7.02    Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders	33
Section 7.03    Effect of Supplemental Indenture	34
Section 7.04    Documents to Be Given to Trustee	34
Section 7.05    Notation on Securities in Respect of Supplemental Indentures	34
ARTICLE 8 CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, SALE OR CONVEYANCE	35
Section 8.01    Issuer May Consolidate, etc	35
Section 8.02    Successor Corporation Substituted	35



Table of Contents  
(continued)

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE 9 DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	36
Section 9.01    Defeasance Within One Year of Payment	36
Section 9.02    Defeasance	37
Section 9.03    Covenant Defeasance	38
Section 9.04    Application of Trust Money	38
Section 9.05    Repayment to Issuer	39
ARTICLE 10 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	39
Section 10.01    Incorporators, Stockholders, Officers and Directors Exempt from Individual Liability	39
Section 10.02    Provisions of Indenture for the Sole Benefit of Parties and Securityholders	39
Section 10.03    Successors and Assigns of Issuer Bound by Indenture	39
Section 10.04    Notices and Demands on Issuer, Trustee and Securityholders	40
Section 10.05    Officers' Certificates and Opinions of Counsel; Statements to be Contained Therein	40
Section 10.06    Payments Due on Saturdays, Sundays and Holidays	41
Section 10.07    Conflict of Any Provision of Indenture with Trust Indenture Act of 1939	41
Section 10.08    New York Law to Govern	41
Section 10.09    Counterparts	41
Section 10.10    Effect of Headings	41
ARTICLE 11 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	42
Section 11.01    Applicability of Article	42
Section 11.02    Notice of Redemption; Partial Redemptions	42
Section 11.03    Payment of Securities Called for Redemption	43
Section 11.04    Exclusion of Certain Securities from Eligibility for Selection for Redemption	43
Section 11.05    Conversion Arrangement On Call For Redemption	44

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	<u>Page</u>
<b>ARTICLE 12 CONVERSION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>44</b>
Section 12.01 Applicability of Article	44
Section 12.02 Right of Securityholders to Convert Securities	45
Section 12.03 Issuance of Shares of Capital Stock on Conversion	45
Section 12.04 No Payment or Adjustment for Interest or Dividends	46
Section 12.05 Adjustment of Conversion Rate	46
Section 12.06 No Fractional Shares to Be Issued	49
Section 12.07 Preservation of Conversion Rights Upon Consolidation, Merger, Sale or Conveyance	49
Section 12.08 Notice to Security Holders of a Series Prior to Taking Certain Types of Action	50
Section 12.09 Covenant to Reserve Shares for Issuance on Conversion of Securities	51
Section 12.10 Compliance with Governmental Requirements	51
Section 12.11 Payment of Taxes Upon Certificates for Shares Issued Upon Conversion	51
Section 12.12 Trustee's Duties with Respect to Conversion Provisions	51
<b>ARTICLE 13 SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>52</b>
Section 13.01 Agreement Of Subordination	52
Section 13.02 Payments to Holders	52
Section 13.03 Subrogation Of Securities	53
Section 13.04 Authorization By Holders	54
Section 13.05 Notice to Trustee	55
Section 13.06 Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness	55
Section 13.07 No Impairment Of Subordination	55
Section 13.08 Rights Of Trustee	55

THIS INDENTURE, dated as of , between MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “**Issuer**”) and ●, a ● corporation, as trustee (the “**Trustee**”).

**WITNESSETH:**

WHEREAS, the Issuer has duly authorized the issue from time to time of its unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness to be issued in one or more series (the “**Securities**”) up to such principal amount or amounts as may from time to time be authorized in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and to provide, among other things, for the authentication, delivery and administration thereof, the Issuer has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid indenture and agreement according to its terms have been done;

NOW, THEREFORE:

In consideration of the premises and the purchases of the Securities by the Holders thereof, the Issuer and the Trustee mutually covenant and agree for the equal and proportionate benefit of the respective Holders from time to time of the Securities as follows:

**ARTICLE 1  
DEFINITIONS**

Section 1.01 *Certain Terms Defined.* The following terms (except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise clearly requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 or the definitions of which in the Securities Act of 1933 are referred to in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, including terms defined therein by reference to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, (except as herein otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise clearly requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of this Indenture. All accounting terms used herein and not expressly defined shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in accordance with GAAP. The words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision. The terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular.

“**Affiliate**” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“**Authorized Newspaper**” means a newspaper in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily printed on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in the place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of such place. If, because of temporary suspension of publication or general circulation of any newspaper or for any other reason, it is impossible or impracticable to make any publication of any notice required by this Indenture in the manner herein provided, such publication or other notice in lieu thereof which is made at the written direction of the Issuer by the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient publication of such notice.

“**Board of Directors**” means either the Board of Directors of the Issuer or any committee of such Board duly authorized to act hereunder.

“**Business Day**” means, with respect to any Security, a day that in the city (or in all of the cities, if more than one) in which amounts are payable, as specified in the form of such Security, is not a day on which banking institutions are authorized by law or regulation to close.

“**Capitalized Lease**” means, as applied to any Person, any lease of any property (whether real, personal, or mixed) of which the discounted present value of the rental obligations of such Person as lessee, in conformity with GAAP, is required to be capitalized on the balance sheet of such Person; and “**Capitalized Lease Obligation**” is defined to mean the rental obligations, as aforesaid, under such lease.

“**Capital Stock**” means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s capital stock or other ownership interests, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of this Indenture, including, without limitation, all Common Stock and Preferred Stock.

“**Closing Price**” on any day when used with respect to any class of Capital Stock means the closing sale price per share (or if no closing sale price is reported, the average of the bid and ask prices or, if more than one in either case, the average of the average bid and the average ask prices) on that date as reported by The Nasdaq Global Select Market or, if such Capital Stock is not listed on The Nasdaq Global Select Market, then on the principal U.S. national or regional securities exchange on which such Capital Stock is then listed. If such Capital Stock is not listed on either The Nasdaq Global Select Market or on any U.S. national or regional securities exchange on the relevant date, the Closing Price will be the last quoted bid price for the Company’s Common Stock in the over-the-counter market on the relevant date as reported by the OTC Markets Group Inc. or similar organization. In the event that no such quotation is available for any day, the Board of Directors shall be entitled to determine in good faith the current market price on the basis of such quotations as it considers appropriate.

“**Commission**” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or if at any time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties on such date.

“**Common Stock**” means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of the Indenture, including, without limitation, all series and classes of such common stock.

“**Corporate Trust Office**” means the office of the Trustee at which the corporate trust business of the Trustee shall, at any particular time, be principally administered, which office is, at the date as of which this Indenture is dated, located at ●.

“**Currency Agreement**” means any foreign exchange contract, currency swap agreement, or other similar agreement or arrangement designed to protect against the fluctuation in currency values.

“**Default**” means any Event of Default as defined in Section 4.01 and any event that is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“**Depository**” means, with respect to the Securities of any series issuable or issued in the form of one or more Registered Global Securities, the Person designated as Depository by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.03 until a successor Depository shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “**Depository**” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Depository hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “**Depository**” as used with respect to the Securities of any such series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Registered Global Securities of that series.

“**Determination Date**” has the meaning specified in Section 12.05.

“**Event of Default**” has the meaning specified in Section 4.01.

“**GAAP**” means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America as in effect as of the date of determination, including, without limitation, those set forth in the opinions and pronouncements of the Accounting Principles Board of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and statements and pronouncements of the Financial Accounting Standards Board or in such other statements by such other entity as approved by a significant segment of the accounting profession. All ratios and computations contained in this Indenture shall be computed in conformity with GAAP applied on a consistent basis.

“**Guarantee**” means any obligation, contingent or otherwise, of any Person directly or indirectly guaranteeing any Indebtedness or other obligation of any other Person and, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any obligation, direct or indirect, contingent or otherwise, of such Person:

(i) to purchase or pay (or advance or supply funds for the purchase or payment of) such Indebtedness or other obligation of such other Person (whether arising by virtue of partnership arrangements, or by agreement to keep-well, to purchase assets, goods, securities, or services, to take-or-pay, or to maintain financial statement conditions or otherwise); or

(ii) entered into for purposes of assuring in any other manner the obligee of such Indebtedness or other obligation of the payment thereof or to protect such obligee against loss in respect thereof (in whole or in part);

*provided*, that the term “**Guarantee**” shall not include endorsements for collection or deposit in the ordinary course of business. The term “**Guarantee**” used as a verb has a corresponding meaning.

“**Holder**”, “**Securityholder**” or other similar terms mean the registered holder of any Security.

“**Indebtedness**” means, with respect to any Person at any date of determination (without duplication):

(i) all indebtedness of such Person for borrowed money;

(ii) all obligations of such Person evidenced by bonds, debentures, notes, or other similar instruments, in each case, for value received or settlement of claims;

(iii) all obligations of such Person in respect of letters of credit or other similar instruments (including reimbursement obligations with respect thereto);

(iv) all obligations of such Person to pay the deferred and unpaid purchase price of property or services (but excluding trade accounts payable or accrued liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business);

(v) all obligations of such Person as lessee under Capitalized Leases;

(vi) all Indebtedness of other Persons secured by a Lien on any asset of such Person, whether or not such Indebtedness is assumed by such Person;*provided* that the amount of such Indebtedness shall be the lesser of:

(1) the fair market value of such asset at such date of determination; and

(2) amount of such Indebtedness;

(vii) all Indebtedness of other Persons to the extent Guaranteed by such Person; and

(viii) to the extent not otherwise included in this definition, obligations under Currency Agreements and Interest Rate Agreements.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in no event shall the term “Indebtedness” be deemed to include letters of credit or bonds that secure performance or surety bonds or similar instruments that are issued in the ordinary course of business.

The amount of Indebtedness of any Person at any date shall be the outstanding balance at such date of all unconditional obligations as described above and, with respect to contingent obligations, the maximum liability upon the occurrence of the contingency giving rise to the obligation; provided that:

(x) the amount outstanding at any time of any Indebtedness issued with original issue discount is the face amount of such Indebtedness less the remaining unamortized portion of the original issue discount of such Indebtedness at such time as determined in conformity with GAAP; and

(y) Indebtedness shall not include any liability for federal, state, local, or other taxes.

**“Indenture”** means this instrument as originally executed and delivered or, if amended or supplemented as herein provided, as so amended or supplemented or both, and shall include the forms and terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated hereunder.

**“Interest”** means, when used with respect to non-interest bearing Securities, interest payable after maturity. **“Interest Rate Agreement”** means any obligation of any Person pursuant to any interest rate swap, cap, collar or similar arrangement providing protection against fluctuations in interest rates. For purposes of the Indenture, the amount of such obligation shall be the amount determined in respect thereof as of the end of the then most recently ended fiscal quarter of such Person, based on the assumption that such obligation had terminated at the end of such fiscal quarter, and in making such determination, if any agreement relating to such obligation provides for the netting of amounts payable by and to such Person thereunder or if any such agreement provides for the simultaneous payment of amounts by and to such Person, then in each such case, the amount of such obligation shall be the net amount so determined, plus any premium due upon default by such Person.

**“Issuer”** means the Person identified as “Issuer” in the first paragraph hereof and, subject to Article 8, its successors and assigns.

**“Lien”** means, with respect to any asset, any mortgage, lien, pledge, charge, security interest or encumbrance of any kind, or any other type of preferential arrangement that has the practical effect of creating a security interest, in respect of such asset. For the purposes of this Indenture, the Issuer shall be deemed to own subject to a Lien any asset that it has acquired or holds subject to the interest of a vendor or lessor under any conditional sale agreement, capital lease or other title retention agreement relating to such asset.

**“Officers’ Certificate”** means a certificate signed by the chairman of the Issuer’s Board of Directors, its president or any vice president, and by its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary of the Issuer, and delivered to the Trustee. Each such certificate shall comply with Section 314 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and include the statements provided for in Section 10.05.

**“Opinion of Counsel”** means an opinion in writing signed by legal counsel who may be an employee of or counsel to the Issuer and who shall be satisfactory to the Trustee. Each such opinion shall comply with Section 314 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and include the statements provided for in Section 10.05, if and to the extent required hereby.

**“Original Issue Date”** of any Security (or portion thereof) means the earlier of (i) the date of such Security or (ii) the date of any Security (or portion thereof) for which such Security was issued (directly or indirectly) on registration of transfer, exchange or substitution.

**“Original Issue Discount Security”** means any Security that provides for an amount less than the Principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01.

**“Outstanding”**, when used with reference to Securities, shall, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, mean, as of any particular time, all Securities authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except:

(i) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for the payment or redemption of which monies in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Issuer) or shall have been set aside, segregated and held in trust by the Issuer for the Holders of such Securities (if the Issuer shall act as its own paying agent), provided that if such Securities, or portions thereof, are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as herein provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and

(iii) Securities in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered, or which shall have been paid, pursuant to the terms of Section 2.09 (except with respect to any such Security as to which proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that such Security is held by a person in whose hands such Security is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Issuer).

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite Principal amount of Outstanding Securities of any or all series have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the Principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purposes shall be the amount of the Principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of such determination upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01.

**“Person”** means any individual, corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, association, joint stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof or any other entity.

**“Preferred Stock”** means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated, whether voting or non-voting) of the Issuer’s preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, whether now outstanding or issued after the date of the Indenture, including, without limitation, all series and classes of such preferred stock.

**“Principal”** means, with respect to the Securities or any Security or any portion thereof, the principal amount of such Securities, Security or portion thereof, and shall be deemed to include “and premium, if any”.



“**record date**” as used with respect to any interest payment date (except a date for payment of defaulted interest), has the meaning specified in Section 2.07.

“**Registered Global Security**” means a Security evidencing all or a part of a series of Registered Securities, issued to the Depository for such series in accordance with Section 2.04, and bearing the legend prescribed in Section 2.04.

“**Registered Security**” means any Security registered on the register maintained by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.08.

“**Responsible Officer**” when used with respect to the Trustee means any officer within the corporate trust department of the Trustee, including any vice president, assistant vice president, assistant secretary, assistant treasurer, trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee who customarily performs functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such person’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“**Security**” or “**Securities**” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture, or, as the case may be, Securities that have been authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“**Senior Indebtedness**” of the Issuer means (a) all Indebtedness of the Issuer, whether currently outstanding or hereafter issued, unless, by the terms of the instrument creating or evidencing such Indebtedness, it is provided that such Indebtedness is not superior in right of payment to the Securities, and (b) any modifications, refunding, deferrals, renewals or extensions of any such Indebtedness or securities, notes or other evidence of Indebtedness issued in exchange for such Indebtedness; provided that in no event shall “**Senior Indebtedness**” include (i) Indebtedness of the Issuer owed or owing to any Subsidiary of the Issuer or any officer, director or employee of the Issuer or any Subsidiary of the Issuer, (ii) Indebtedness to trade creditors or (iii) any liability for taxes owned or owing by the Issuer.

“**Subsidiary**” means, with respect to any Person, any corporation, association or other business entity of which more than 50% of all votes represented by all classes of outstanding Voting Stock is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person.

“**Trustee**” means the Person identified as “**Trustee**” in the first paragraph hereof and, subject to the provisions of Article 5, shall also include any successor trustee.

“**Trust Indenture Act of 1939**” (except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01 and Section 7.02) means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was originally executed.

“**UCC**” means the Uniform Commercial Code, as in effect in each applicable jurisdiction. “**Unregistered Security**” means any Security other than a Registered Security.

“**U.S. Government Obligations**” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of an agency of instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such U.S. Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such U.S. Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest on or principal of the U.S. Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“**Voting Stock**” means, with respect to any Person, capital stock of any class or kind ordinarily having the power to vote for the election of directors, managers or other voting members of the governing body of such Person.

“**vice president**” when used with respect to the Issuer or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title of “**vice president**”.

“**Wholly-Owned**” is defined to mean, with respect to any Subsidiary of any Person, such Subsidiary if all of the outstanding common stock or other similar equity ownership interests (but not including preferred stock) in such Subsidiary (other than any director’s qualifying shares or investments by foreign nationals mandated by applicable law) is owned directly or indirectly by such Person.

“**Yield to Maturity**” means the yield to maturity on a series of securities, calculated at the time of issuance of such series, or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such series, and calculated in accordance with accepted financial practice.

## **ARTICLE 2 SECURITIES**

Section 2.01 *Forms Generally*. The Securities of each series shall be substantially in such form (not inconsistent with this Indenture) as shall be established by or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have imprinted or otherwise reproduced thereon such legend or legends, not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, as may be required to comply with any law or with any rules or regulations pursuant thereto, or with any rules of any securities exchange or to conform to general usage, all as may be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities. The Issuer shall furnish any such legends to the Trustee in writing.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

Section 2.02 *Form of Trustee's Certification of Authentication*. The Trustee's certificate of authentication on all Securities shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated herein and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

•,  
as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory:

Section 2.03 *Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series*. The aggregate Principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series:

(a) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other Securities);

(b) any limit upon the aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 2.08, Section 2.09, Section 2.11 or Section 12.03);

(c) the date or dates on which the Principal of the Securities of the series is payable;

(d) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, or the method by which such rate shall be determined, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the interest payment dates on which such interest shall be payable and the record dates for the determination of Holders to whom interest is payable;

(e) the place or places where the Principal of and any interest on Securities of the series shall be payable (if other than as provided in Section 3.02);

(f) the price or prices at which, the period or periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Issuer;

(g) the obligation, if any, of the Issuer to redeem, purchase or repay Securities of the series at the option of a Holder thereof and the price or prices at which, the period or periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, purchased or repaid, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(h) the obligation, if any, of the Issuer to permit the conversion of the Securities of such series into Capital Stock, and the terms and conditions upon which such conversion shall be effected (including, without limitation, the initial conversion price or rate, the conversion period and any other provision in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in this Indenture relative to such obligation);

(i) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any multiple thereof, the denominations in which Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(j) if other than the Principal amount thereof, the portion of the Principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 4.01 or provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 4.02;

(k) if the Securities of the series are issuable in whole or in part as one or more Registered Global Securities, the identity of the Depositary for such Registered Global Security or Securities;

(l) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture);

(m) any trustees, authenticating or paying agents, transfer agents or registrar or any other agents with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(n) the extent to which payments on the Securities will be subordinated to the payment of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to such resolution of the Board of Directors or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

Section 2.04 *Authentication and Delivery of Securities*. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Issuer may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Issuer to the Trustee for authentication, and the Trustee shall thereupon authenticate and deliver such Securities to or upon the written order of the Issuer, such order to be signed by both (a) the chairman of its Board of Directors, its president or any vice president and by its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary, without any further action by the Issuer. In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to Section 5.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon:

(a) a certified copy of any resolution or resolutions of the Board of Directors authorizing the action taken pursuant to the resolution or resolutions delivered under clause (b) below;

secretary of the Issuer;

(b) a copy of any resolution or resolutions of the Board of Directors relating to such series, in each case certified by the secretary or an assistant

(c) an executed supplemental indenture, if any, and the documentation required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7.04;

(d) an Officers' Certificate setting forth the form and terms of the Securities as required pursuant to Section 2.01 and Section 2.03, respectively and prepared in accordance with Section 10.05;

(e) an Opinion of Counsel, prepared in accordance with Section 10.05, to the effect:

(i) that the form or forms and terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors or by a supplemental indenture as permitted by Section 2.01 and Section 2.03 in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and

(ii) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Issuer in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable against the Issuer in accordance with their terms, except to the extent that enforcement thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance or similar laws now or hereafter in effect relating to creditors' rights generally, and general principles of equity (regardless of whether enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law).

The Trustee shall have the right to decline to authenticate and deliver any Securities under this section if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken by the Issuer or if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors or board of trustees, executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or trustees or Responsible Officers shall determine that such action would expose the Trustee to personal liability.

If the Issuer shall establish pursuant to Section 2.03 that the Securities of a series or a portion thereof are to be issued in the form of one or more Registered Global Securities, then the Issuer shall execute (in accordance with Section 2.05) and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery one or more Registered Global Securities that (i) shall represent and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate Principal amount of all of the Securities of such series issued in such form and not yet canceled, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depositary for such Registered Global Security or Securities or the nominee of such Depositary, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to such Depositary or its custodian or pursuant to such Depositary's instructions and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Unless and until it is exchanged in whole or in part for Securities in definitive registered form, this Security may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depositary to a nominee of the Depositary or by a nominee of the Depositary to the Depositary or another nominee of the Depositary or by the Depositary or any such nominee to a successor Depositary or a nominee of such successor Depositary."

Section 2.05 *Execution of Securities*. The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Issuer by the chairman of its Board of Directors, its president, any vice president, its treasurer or any assistant treasurer, under its corporate seal and attested by its secretary or any assistant secretary. Such signatures may be the manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such officers. The seal of the Issuer may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities. Typographical and other minor errors or defects in any such reproduction of the seal or any such signature shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any Security that has been duly authenticated and delivered by the Trustee.

In case any officer of the Issuer who shall have signed any of the Securities shall cease to be such officer before the Security so signed shall be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee or disposed of by the Issuer, such Security nevertheless may be authenticated and delivered or disposed of as though the person who signed such Security had not ceased to be such officer of the Issuer; and any Security may be signed on behalf of the Issuer by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Security, shall be the proper officers of the Issuer, although at the date of the execution and delivery of this Indenture any such person was not such an officer.

Section 2.06 *Certificate of Authentication*. Only such Securities as shall bear thereon a certificate of authentication substantially in the form hereinbefore recited, executed by the Trustee by the manual signature of one of its authorized signatories, shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose. Such certificate by the Trustee upon any Security executed by the Issuer shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the Holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

Section 2.07 *Denomination and Date of Securities; Payments of Interest*. The Securities shall be issuable as registered securities without coupons and in denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 2.03. In the absence of any such specification with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any multiple thereof. The Securities shall be numbered, lettered, or otherwise distinguished in such manner or in accordance with such plan as the officers of the Issuer executing the same may determine as evidenced by the execution and authentication thereof.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication, shall bear interest, if any, from the date and shall be payable on the dates, in each case, which shall be specified as contemplated by Section 2.03.

The person in whose name any Security of any series is registered at the close of business on any record date applicable to a particular series with respect to any interest payment date for such series shall be entitled to receive the interest, if any, payable on such interest payment date notwithstanding any transfer or exchange of such Security subsequent to the record date and prior to such interest payment date, except if and to the extent the Issuer shall default in the payment of the interest due on such interest payment date for such series, in which case such defaulted interest shall be paid to the persons in whose names Outstanding Securities for such series are registered at the close of business on a subsequent record date (which shall be not less than five Business Days prior to the date of payment of such defaulted interest) established by notice given by mail by or on behalf of the Issuer to the Holders of Securities not less than 15 days preceding such subsequent record date. The term "**record date**" as used with respect to any interest payment date (except a date for payment of defaulted interest) shall mean the date specified as such in the terms of the Securities of any particular series, or, if no such date is so specified, if such interest payment date is the first day of a calendar month, the fifteenth day of the next preceding calendar month or, if such interest payment date is the fifteenth day of a calendar month, the first day of such calendar month, whether or not such record date is a Business Day.

Section 2.08 *Registration, Transfer and Exchange*. The Issuer will keep or cause to be kept at each office or agency to be maintained for the purpose as provided in Section 3.02 a register or registers in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it will register, and will register the transfer of, Securities as in this Article provided. Such register shall be in written form in the English language or in any other form capable of being converted into such form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times such register or registers shall be open for inspection by the Trustee.

At the option of the Holder thereof, Registered Securities of any series (other than a Registered Global Security, except as set forth below) may be exchanged for a Registered Security or Registered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Registered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. If the Securities of any series are issued in both registered and unregistered form, except as otherwise established pursuant to Section 2.03, at the option of the Holder thereof, Unregistered Securities of any series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Unregistered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. At the option of the Holder thereof, if Unregistered Securities of any series, maturity date, interest rate and Original Issue Date are issued in more than one authorized denomination, except as otherwise established pursuant to Section 2.03, such Unregistered Securities may be exchanged for Unregistered Securities of such series and tenor having authorized denominations and an equal aggregate Principal amount, upon surrender of such Unregistered Securities to be exchanged at the agency of the Issuer that shall be maintained for such purpose in accordance with Section 3.02 and upon payment, if the Issuer shall so require, of the charges hereinafter provided. Registered Securities of any series may not be exchanged for Unregistered Securities of such series. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Registered Securities presented for registration of transfer, exchange, redemption, conversion or payment shall be duly endorsed by, or be accompanied by a written instrument or instruments of transfer in form satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

The Issuer may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities. No service charge shall be made for any such transaction.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 2.08, unless and until it is exchanged in whole or in part for Securities in definitive registered form, a Registered Global Security representing all or a portion of the Securities of a series may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depository for such series to a nominee of such Depository or by a nominee of such Depository to such Depository or another nominee of such Depository or by such Depository or any such nominee to a successor Depository for such series or a nominee of such successor Depository.

If at any time the Depository for any Registered Global Securities of any series notifies the Issuer that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Registered Global Securities or if at any time the Depository for such Registered Global Securities shall no longer be eligible under applicable law, the Issuer shall appoint a successor Depository eligible under applicable law with respect to such Registered Global Securities. If a successor Depository eligible under applicable law for such Registered Global Securities is not appointed by the Issuer within 90 days after the Issuer receives such notice or becomes aware of such ineligibility, the Issuer will execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of the Issuer's order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Registered Securities of such series and tenor, will authenticate and make available for delivery Registered Securities of such series and tenor, in any authorized denominations, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to the Principal amount of such Registered Global Securities, in exchange for such Registered Global Securities.

The Issuer may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that any Registered Global Securities of any series shall no longer be maintained in global form. In such event, or in the event that there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to a series of Securities, the Issuer will, upon the request of any Holder, execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of the Issuer's order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Registered Securities of such series and tenor, will authenticate and make available for delivery, Registered Securities of such series and tenor in any authorized denominations, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to the Principal amount of such Registered Global Securities, in exchange for such Registered Global Securities.

Any time the Registered Securities of any series are not in the form of Registered Global Securities pursuant to the preceding two paragraphs, the Issuer agrees to supply the Trustee with a reasonable supply of certificated Registered Securities without the legend required by Section 2.04 and the Trustee agrees to hold such Registered Securities in safekeeping until authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

If established by the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.03 with respect to any Registered Global Security, the Depositary for such Registered Global Security may surrender such Registered Global Security in exchange in whole or in part for Registered Securities of the same series and tenor in definitive registered form on such terms as are acceptable to the Issuer and such Depositary. Thereupon, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, without service charge,

(i) to the Person specified by such Depositary new Registered Securities of the same series and tenor, of any authorized denominations as requested by such Person, in an aggregate Principal amount equal to and in exchange for such Person's beneficial interest in the Registered Global Security; and

(ii) to such Depositary a new Registered Global Security in a denomination equal to the difference, if any, between the Principal amount of the surrendered Registered Global Security and the aggregate Principal amount of Registered Securities authenticated and delivered pursuant to clause (i) above.

Registered Securities issued in exchange for a Registered Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.08 shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depositary for such Registered Global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee or an agent of the Issuer or the Trustee. The Trustee or such agent shall deliver such Securities to or as directed by the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

All Securities issued upon any transfer or exchange of Securities shall be valid obligations of the Issuer, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such transfer or exchange.

Notwithstanding anything herein or in the forms or terms of any Securities to the contrary, none of the Issuer, the Trustee or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be required to exchange any Unregistered Security for a Registered Security if such exchange would result in adverse Federal income tax consequences to the Issuer (such as, for example, the inability of the Issuer to deduct from its income, as computed for Federal income tax purposes, the interest payable on the Unregistered Securities) under then applicable United States Federal income tax laws. The Trustee and any such agent shall be entitled to rely on an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel in determining such result.

Neither the Registrar nor the Issuer shall be required (i) to issue, authenticate, register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any series for a period of 15 days before the mailing of a notice of redemption of such Securities to be redeemed or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security selected for redemption in whole or in part.



Section 2.09 *Mutilated, Defaced, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities*. In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or defaced and shall be surrendered to the Trustee, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated or defaced Security. If the Holder of any Security claims that the Security has been lost, destroyed or wrongfully taken, the Issuer shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the lost, destroyed or wrongfully taken Security, if the applicant so requests before the Issuer has notice that the Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, and the applicant furnishes to the Issuer and to the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to indemnify and defend and to save each of them harmless and the applicant satisfies other reasonable requirements imposed by the Issuer.

Upon the issuance of any substitute Security, the Issuer may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee and its counsel) connected therewith. In case any Security which has matured or is about to mature or has been called for redemption in full shall become mutilated or defaced or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Issuer may instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated or defaced Security), if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee such security or taking, the applicant shall also furnish to the Issuer and the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or wrongful taking of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

Every substitute Security of any series issued pursuant to the provisions of this section by virtue of the fact that any such Security is destroyed, lost or stolen shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Issuer, whether or not the destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone and shall be entitled to all the benefits of (but shall be subject to all the limitations of rights set forth in) this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of such series duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that, to the extent permitted by law, the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, defaced or destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Securities and shall preclude any and all other rights or remedies.

Section 2.10 *Cancellation of Securities; Destruction Thereof*. All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, repurchase, conversion, registration of transfer or exchange, if surrendered to the Issuer or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee, shall be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be canceled by it; and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. The Trustee shall dispose of canceled Securities held by it in accordance with the record retention policies of the Trustee in effect from time to time and, if such canceled certificates are destroyed, shall deliver a certificate of destruction to the Issuer. If the Issuer shall acquire any of the Securities, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

Section 2.11 *Temporary Securities*. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities for any series, the Issuer may execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver temporary Securities for such series (printed, lithographed, typewritten or otherwise reproduced, in each case in form satisfactory to the Trustee). Temporary Securities of any series shall be issuable as registered Securities without coupons, of any authorized denomination, and substantially in the form of the definitive Securities of such series but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Issuer with the concurrence of the Trustee. Temporary Securities may contain such reference to any provisions of this Indenture as may be appropriate. Every temporary Security shall be executed by the Issuer and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities. Without unreasonable delay the Issuer shall execute and shall furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor without charge at each office or agency to be maintained by the Issuer for that purpose pursuant to Section 3.02, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities of such series a like aggregate Principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

Section 2.12 *Computation of Interest*. Except as otherwise specified in the Securities of a series, interest shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

Section 2.13 *CUSIP Numbers*. The Issuer in issuing the Securities may use “CUSIP” numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Issuer will notify the Trustee of any change in the “CUSIP” numbers.

### ARTICLE 3 COVENANTS OF THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE

Section 3.01 *Payment of Principal and Interest*. The Issuer covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the Principal of, and interest on, each of the Securities of such series at the place or places, at the respective times and in the manner provided in such Securities. Each installment of interest on the Securities of any series may be paid by mailing checks for such interest payable to or upon the written order of the Holders of Securities entitled thereto as they shall appear on the registry books of the Issuer.

Notwithstanding any provisions of this Indenture and the Securities of any series to the contrary, if the Issuer and a Holder of any Registered Security so agree or if expressly provided pursuant to Section 2.03, payments of interest on, and any portion of the Principal of, such Holder’s Registered Security shall be made by the paying agent, upon receipt from the Issuer of immediately available funds by 11:00 a.m., New York City time (or such other time as may be agreed to between the Issuer and the paying agent) or the Issuer, directly to the Holder of such Security (by wire transfer of Federal funds or immediately available funds or otherwise) if the Holder has delivered written instructions to the Trustee 15 days prior to such payment date requesting that such payment will be so made and designating the bank account to which such payments shall be so made and, in the case of payments of Principal, surrenders the same to the Trustee. The Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the last instruction delivered by the Holder pursuant to this Section 3.01 unless a new instruction is delivered 15 days prior to a payment date. The Issuer will indemnify and hold each of the Trustee and any paying agent harmless against any loss, liability or expense (including attorneys’ fees and expenses) resulting from any act or omission to act on the part of the Issuer or any such Holder in connection with any such agreement or from making any payment in accordance with any such agreement.

Section 3.02 *Offices for Payments, etc*. So long as any of the Securities remain outstanding, the Issuer will maintain in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York an office or agency (o) where the Securities may be presented for payment, (p) where the Securities may be presented for registration of transfer and for exchange as in this Indenture provided, (q) where notices and demands to or upon the Issuer in respect of the Securities or of this Indenture may be served and (r) for Securities of each series that is convertible, where such Securities may be presented for conversion. The Issuer will give to the Trustee written notice of the location of any such office or agency and of any change of location thereof. Unless otherwise specified in accordance with Section 2.03, the Issuer hereby initially designates the Corporate Trust Office of Trustee as the office to be maintained by it for each such purpose. In case the Issuer shall fail to so designate or maintain any such office or agency or shall fail to give such notice of the location or of any change in the location thereof, presentations and demands may be made and notices may be served at the Corporate Trust Office.

Section 3.03 *Paying Agents*. Whenever the Issuer shall appoint a paying agent other than the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series, it will cause such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(a) that it will hold all sums received by it as such agent for the payment of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Issuer or by any other obligor on the Securities of such series) in trust for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series or of the Trustee;

(b) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Issuer (or by any other obligor on the Securities of such series) to make any payment of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series when the same shall be due and payable; and during the continuance of the failure referred to in clause Section 3.03(b) above.

The Issuer will, on or prior to each due date of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay such Principal or interest so becoming due, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee of any failure to take such action.

If the Issuer shall act as its own paying agent with respect to the Securities of any Series, it will, on or before each due date of the Principal of or interest on the Securities of such series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series a sum sufficient to pay such Principal or interest so becoming due. The Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee of any failure to take such action.

Whenever the Issuer shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the Principal of or interest on any Securities of such series, deposit with the paying agent or agents for the Securities of such series a sum, by 11:00 a.m. New York City time in immediately available funds on the payment date, sufficient to pay the Principal or interest so becoming due with respect to the Securities of such series, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee in writing of any failure so to act.

Anything in this section to the contrary notwithstanding, the Issuer may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining a satisfaction and discharge with respect to one or more or all series of Securities hereunder, or for any other reason, pay or cause to be paid to the Trustee all sums held in trust for any such series by the Issuer or any paying agent hereunder, as required by this Section, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the trusts herein contained.

Anything in this Section 3.03 to the contrary notwithstanding, the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section 3.03 is subject to the provisions of Section 9.05.

Section 3.04 *Certificate of the Issuer*. Within 120 days after the close of the fiscal year ended ●, and within 120 days after the close of each fiscal year thereafter, the Issuer will furnish to the Trustee a brief certificate (which need not comply with Section 10.05) from the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Issuer as to his or her knowledge of the Issuer's compliance with all conditions and covenants under the Indenture (such compliance to be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under the Indenture).

At the time such certificate is filed, the Issuer will also file with the Trustee a letter or statement of the independent accountants who shall have certified the financial statements of the Issuer for its preceding fiscal year to the effect that, in making the examination necessary for certification of such financial statements, they have obtained no knowledge of any default by the Issuer in the performance or fulfillment of any covenant, agreement or condition contained in this Indenture, which default remains uncured at the date of such letter or statement, or, if they shall have obtained knowledge of any such uncured default, specifying in such letter or statement such default or defaults and the nature and status thereof, it being understood that such accountants shall not be liable directly or indirectly for failure to obtain knowledge of any such default or defaults, and that nothing contained in this Section 3.04 shall be construed to require such accountants to make any investigation beyond the scope required in connection with such examination.

Section 3.05 *List of Securityholders*. If and so long as the Trustee shall not be the Security registrar for the Securities of any series, the Issuer will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee a list in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require of the names and addresses of the Holders of the Securities of such series pursuant to Section 312 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (a) semi-annually not more than 10 days after each record date for the payment of interest on such Securities, as hereinabove specified, as of such record date and on dates to be determined pursuant to Section 2.03 for non-interest bearing Securities in each year and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after receipt by the Issuer of any such request as of a date not more than 10 days prior to the time such information is furnished.

Section 3.06 *Reports by the Issuer*. The Issuer covenants to:

(a) file, whether or not required to do so under applicable law, with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Issuer files the same with the Commission:

(i) copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports which the Issuer files with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and

(ii) such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Issuer with the conditions and covenants provided for in this Indenture as the Issuer may from time to time file with the Commission; and

(b) transmit to the Securityholders, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 10.04, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed with the Trustee pursuant to the provisions of subdivision (a) of this Section 3.06 as may be required by the rules and regulations of the Commission.

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Issuer's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

Section 3.07 *Corporate Existence*. So long as any of the Securities remain unpaid, the Issuer will at all times (except as otherwise provided or permitted elsewhere in this Indenture) do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence.

Section 3.08 *Restrictions on Mergers, Sales and Consolidations*. So long as any of the Securities remain unpaid, the Issuer will not consolidate or merge with or sell, convey or lease all or substantially all of its property to any other corporation except as permitted in Article 8 hereof.

Section 3.09 *Further Assurances*. From time to time whenever requested by the Trustee, the Issuer will execute and deliver such further instruments and assurances and do such further acts as may be reasonably necessary or proper to carry out more effectually the purposes of this Indenture or to secure the rights and remedies hereunder of the Holders of the Securities of any series.

**ARTICLE 4**  
**REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS**  
**ON EVENT OF DEFAULT**

Section 4.01 *Event of Default Defined; Acceleration of Maturity; Waiver of Default* “**Event of Default**” with respect to Securities of any series wherever used herein, means any one of the following events which shall have occurred and be continuing (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body):

(a) default by the Issuer in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of such series as and when the same shall become due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days;

(b) default by the Issuer in the payment of all or any part of the Principal on any of the Securities of such series as and when the same shall become due and payable either at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, and continuance of such default for a period of five days;

(c) default by the Issuer in the performance, or breach by the Issuer, of any of its covenants or agreements in respect of the Securities of such series (other than a covenant or agreement in respect of the Securities of such series a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this section specifically dealt with), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 30 consecutive days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Issuer by the Trustee or to the Issuer and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in Principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected thereby, a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a notice of default hereunder;

(d) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Issuer in an involuntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee or sequestrator (or similar official) of the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Issuer’s property and assets or the ordering of the winding up or liquidation of the Issuer’s affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days;

(e) the commencement by the Issuer of a voluntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or the consent by the Issuer to the entry of an order for relief in an involuntary case under any such law, or the consent by the Issuer to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee or sequestrator (or similar official) of the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Issuer’s property, or the making of any general assignment by the Issuer for the benefit of creditors; or

(f) any other Event of Default provided in the supplemental indenture or resolution of the Board of Directors under which such series of Securities is issued or in the form of Security for such series.

If an Event of Default described in clauses 4.01(a), 4.01(b), 4.01(c) or 4.01(f) occurs and is continuing, then, and in each and every such case, unless the Principal of all of the Securities of such series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any affected series then Outstanding hereunder (each such series voting as a separate class) by notice in writing to the Issuer (and to the Trustee if given by Securityholders), may declare the entire Principal (or, if the Securities of such series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such series) of all Securities of such series and the interest accrued thereon, if any, to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default described in clauses Section 4.01(d) or Section 4.01(e) occurs and is continuing, then the Principal amount of all the Securities then Outstanding and interest accrued thereon, if any, shall be and become immediately due and payable, without any notice or other action by any Holder or the Trustee, to the full extent permitted by applicable law.

The foregoing provisions, however, are subject to the condition that if, at any time after the Principal (or, if the Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal as may be specified in the terms thereof) of the Securities of any series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the monies due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the Issuer shall pay or shall deposit with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of such series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) and the Principal of any and all Securities of such series (or of all the Securities, as the case may be) which shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such Principal and, to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law, on overdue installments of interest, at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series (or at the respective rates of interest or Yields to Maturity of all the Securities, as the case may be) to the date of such payment or deposit) and such amount as shall be sufficient to cover reasonable compensation to the Trustee, its agents, attorneys and counsel, and all other expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith, and if any and all Events of Default under the Indenture, other than the non-payment of the Principal of Securities which shall have become due by acceleration, shall have been cured, waived or otherwise remedied as provided herein, then and in every such case the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of all the then Outstanding Securities of all such series that have been accelerated, each such series voting as a separate class, by written notice to the Issuer and to the Trustee, may waive all defaults with respect to such series (or with respect to all the Securities, as the case may be) and rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences, but no such waiver or rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or shall impair any right consequent thereon.

For all purposes under this Indenture, if a portion of the Principal of any Original Issue Discount Securities shall have been accelerated and declared due and payable pursuant to the provisions hereof, then, from and after such declaration, unless such declaration has been rescinded and annulled, the Principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed, for all purposes hereunder, to be such Portion of the Principal thereof as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, and payment of such portion of the Principal thereof as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, together with interest, if any, thereon and all other amounts owing thereunder, shall constitute payment in full of such Original Issue Discount Securities.

Section 4.02 *Collection of Indebtedness by Trustee; Trustee May Prove Debt.* The Issuer covenants that (h) in case default shall be made in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of any series when such interest shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 30 days or (i) in case default shall be made in the payment of all or any part of the Principal of any of the Securities of any series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of such series or upon any redemption or by declaration or otherwise, then in each case upon demand of the Trustee, the Issuer will pay to the Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series (x) the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all Securities of such series for Principal or interest, as the case may be (with interest to the date of such payment upon the overdue Principal and, to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law, on overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series) and (y) in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, their respective agents and counsel, and any expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of its negligence or bad faith.

Until such demand is made by the Trustee, the Issuer may pay the Principal of and interest on the Securities of any series to the registered Holders, whether or not the Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series be overdue.

In case the Issuer shall fail forthwith to pay such amounts upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceedings to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Issuer or other obligor upon such Securities and collect in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Issuer or other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated, the monies adjudged or decreed to be payable.

In case there shall be pending proceedings relative to the Issuer or any other obligor upon the Securities under Title 11 of the United States Code or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law, or in case a receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization, liquidator, sequestrator or similar official shall have been appointed for or taken possession of the Issuer or its property or such other obligor, or in case of any other comparable judicial proceedings relative to the Issuer or other obligor upon the Securities of any series, or to the creditors or property of the Issuer or such other obligor, the Trustee, irrespective of whether the Principal of any Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand pursuant to the provisions of this Section, shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceedings or otherwise:

(a) to file and prove a claim or claims for the whole amount of Principal and interest (or, if the Securities of any series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the Principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such series) owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities of any series, and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and for reimbursement of all expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, except as a result of negligence or bad faith) and of the Securityholders allowed in any judicial proceedings relative to the Issuer or other obligor upon the Securities of any series, or to the creditors or property of the Issuer or such other obligor;

(b) unless prohibited by applicable law and regulations, to vote on behalf of the Holders of the Securities of any series in any election of a trustee or a standby trustee in arrangement, reorganization, liquidation or other bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings or person performing similar functions in comparable proceedings; and

(c) to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims, and to distribute all amounts received with respect to the claims of the Securityholders and of the Trustee on their behalf; and any trustee, receiver, or liquidator, custodian or other similar official is hereby authorized by each of the Securityholders to make payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of payments directly to the Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover reasonable compensation to the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and all other expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith and all other amounts due to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee pursuant to Section 5.06.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or vote for or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of any series or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding except, as aforesaid, to vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar person.

All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the Securities, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof on any trial or other proceedings relative thereto, and any such action or proceedings instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment, subject to the payment of the expenses, disbursements and compensation of the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents and attorneys, shall be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such action was taken.

In any proceedings brought by the Trustee (and also any proceedings involving the interpretation of any provision of this Indenture to which the Trustee shall be a party) the Trustee shall be held to represent all the Holders of the Securities in respect to which such action was taken, and it shall not be necessary to make any Holders of such Securities parties to any such proceedings.

Section 4.03 *Application of Proceeds*. Any monies collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article in respect of any series shall be applied in the following order at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such monies on account of Principal or interest, upon presentation of the several Securities in respect of which monies have been collected and stamping (or otherwise noting) thereon the payment, or issuing Securities of such series in reduced Principal amounts in exchange for the presented Securities of like series if only partially paid, or upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses applicable to such series in respect of which monies have been collected, including reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents and attorneys and of all expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith, and all other amounts due to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee pursuant to Section 5.06;

SECOND: In case the Principal of the Securities of such series in respect of which monies have been collected shall not have become and be then due and payable, to the payment of interest on the Securities of such series in default in the order of the maturity of the installments of such interest, with interest (to the extent that such interest has been collected by the Trustee) upon the overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in such Securities, such payments to be made ratably to the persons entitled thereto, without discrimination or preference;

THIRD: In case the Principal of the Securities of such series in respect of which monies have been collected shall have become and shall be then due and payable, to the payment of the whole amount then owing and unpaid upon all the Securities of such series for Principal and interest, with interest upon the overdue Principal, and (to the extent that such interest has been collected by the Trustee) upon overdue installments of interest at the same rate as the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) specified in the Securities of such series; and in case such monies shall be insufficient to pay in full the whole amount so due and unpaid upon the Securities of such series, then to the payment of such Principal and interest or yield to maturity, without preference or priority of Principal over interest or yield to maturity, or of interest or yield to maturity over Principal, or of any installment of interest over any other installment of interest, or of any Security of such series over any other Security of such series, ratably to the aggregate of such Principal and accrued and unpaid interest or yield to maturity; and

FOURTH: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Issuer or any other person lawfully entitled thereto.

Section 4.04 *Suits for Enforcement*. In case an Event of Default has occurred, has not been waived and is continuing, the Trustee may proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.



Section 4.05 *Restoration of Rights on Abandonment of Proceedings*. In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case the Issuer and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Issuer, the Trustee and the Securityholders shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

Section 4.06 *Limitations on Suits by Securityholder*. No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any action or proceeding at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise upon or under or with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a trustee, receiver, liquidator, custodian or other similar official or for any other remedy hereunder, unless such Holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof, as hereinbefore provided, and unless also the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series then outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action or proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as trustee hereunder and shall have offered to the Trustee indemnity satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby and the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity shall have failed to institute any such action or proceeding and no direction inconsistent with such written request shall have been given to the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.09; it being understood and intended, and being expressly covenanted by the Holder of every Security with every other Holder and the Trustee, that no one or more Holders of Securities of any series shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other such Holder of Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such Holder or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all Holders of Securities of the applicable series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

Section 4.07 *Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Institute Certain Suits*. Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture and any provision of any Security, the right of any Holder of any Security to receive payment of the Principal of or interest on such Security on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security, or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such Holder.

Section 4.08 *Powers and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver of Default*. Except as provided in Section 4.06, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Securityholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Securityholder to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to Section 4.06, every power and remedy given by this Indenture or by law to the Trustee or to the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

Section 4.09 *Control by Securityholders*. The Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of each series affected (with each series voting as a separate class) at the time outstanding shall have the right to direct the time, method, and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series by this Indenture; provided that such direction shall not be otherwise than in accordance with law and the provisions of this Indenture and provided further that (subject to the provisions of Section 5.01) the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, shall determine that the action or proceeding so directed may not lawfully be taken or if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors, the executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or Responsible Officers of the Trustee shall determine that the action or proceedings so directed would subject the Trustee to personal liability or if the Trustee in good faith shall so determine that the actions or forbearances specified in or pursuant to such direction would be unduly prejudicial to the interests of Holders of the Securities of all series so affected not joining in the giving of said direction.

Nothing in this Indenture shall impair the right of the Trustee to take any action which is not inconsistent with such direction or directions by Securityholders.

Section 4.10 *Waiver of Past Defaults*. Prior to a declaration of the acceleration of the maturity of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 4.01, the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series at the time Outstanding (each such series voting as a separate class) may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive an existing default or Event of Default, except a default in the payment of Principal of or interest on any Security as specified in clauses (a) or (b) of Section 4.01 or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each Holder affected as provided in Section 7.02. In the case of any such waiver, the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities of each series affected shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist and be deemed to have been cured and not to have occurred, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, and not to have occurred for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 4.11 *Trustee to Give Notice of Default, But May Withhold in Certain Circumstances*. The Trustee shall give to the Securityholders of any series, as the names and addresses of such Holders appear on the registry books, notice by mail of all defaults known to Responsible Officers of the Trustee which have occurred with respect to such series, such notice to be transmitted within 90 days after the occurrence thereof, unless such defaults shall have been cured before the giving of such notice (the term "default" or "defaults" for the purposes of this section being hereby defined to mean any event or condition which is, or with notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default); provided that, except in the case of default in the payment of the Principal of or interest on any of the Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee, or a trust committee of directors or trustees and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the Securityholders of such series.

Section 4.12 *Right of Court to Require Filing of Undertaking to Pay Costs* All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; *provided* that the provisions of this Section 4.12 shall not apply to (i) any suit instituted by the Trustee, (ii) any suit instituted by any Securityholder or group of Securityholders of any series holding in the aggregate more than 10% in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series or (iii) any suit instituted by a Holder pursuant to Section 4.07.

**ARTICLE 5  
CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE**

Section 5.01 *Duties and Responsibilities of the Trustee*. With respect to the Holders of any series of Securities issued hereunder, the Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a particular series and after the curing or waiving of all Events of Default which may have occurred with respect to such series, undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (which has not been cured or waived) the Trustee shall exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(a) Prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of any series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to such series which may have occurred:

(i) the duties and obligations of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any statements, certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such statements, certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this subsection (b) shall not be construed to limit the effect of subsection (a) of this Section 5.01;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts; and

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture.

None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if there shall be reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such liability is not reasonably assured to it.

The provisions of this Section 5.01 are in furtherance of and subject to Sections 315 and 316 of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939.

Whether or not therein expressly provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct of, affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 5.01.

Section 5.02 *Certain Rights of the Trustee*. In furtherance of and subject to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, and subject to Section 5.01:

(a) In the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, Officers' Certificate or any other certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) any request, direction, order or demand of the Issuer mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by an Officers' Certificate (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed); and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be evidenced to the Trustee by a copy thereof certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Issuer;

(c) the Trustee may consult with counsel of its selection and any advice or Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with such advice or Opinion of Counsel;

(d) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the trusts or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in connection with such request, order or direction;

(e) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion, rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default hereunder and after the curing or waiving of all Events of Default, the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, appraisal, bond, debenture, note, coupon, security, or other paper or document unless requested in writing so to do by the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of all series affected then outstanding; provided that, if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require indemnity satisfactory to it against such expenses or liabilities as a condition to proceeding, and the reasonable expenses of every such investigation shall be paid by the Issuer or, if paid by the Trustee or any predecessor trustee, shall be repaid by the Issuer upon demand;

(g) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys not regularly in its employ and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any such agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion, rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(i) the Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture;

(j) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder; and

(k) the Trustee may request that the Issuer deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

Section 5.03 *Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals, Disposition of Securities or Application of Proceeds Thereof*. The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Issuer, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same. The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or the Securities. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Issuer of any of the Securities or of the proceeds thereof.

Section 5.04 *Trustee and Agents May Hold Securities; Collections, etc.* The Trustee or any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not the Trustee or such agent and may otherwise deal with the Issuer and receive, collect, hold and retain collections from the Issuer with the same rights it would have if it were not the Trustee or such agent.

Section 5.05 *Monies Held by Trustee*. All monies received by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by mandatory provisions of law. Neither the Trustee nor any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be under any liability for interest on any monies received by it hereunder.

Section 5.06 *Compensation and Indemnification of Trustee and Its Prior Claim*. The Issuer covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee from time to time, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such compensation as shall be agreed in writing from time to time by the Issuer and the Trustee (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust) and the Issuer covenants and agrees to pay or reimburse the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by or on behalf of it in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all agents and other persons not regularly in its employ) except to the extent any such expense, disbursement or advance may arise from its negligence or bad faith. The Issuer also covenants and agrees to indemnify the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this Indenture or the trusts hereunder and the performance of its duties hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against or investigating any claim of liability (whether asserted by the Issuer, a Holder or any other Person) in the premises, except to the extent such loss, liability or expense is due to the negligence or bad faith of the Trustee or such predecessor Trustee. The obligations of the Issuer under this section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee for expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder and shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or the resignation or removal of the Trustee. Such additional indebtedness shall be a senior claim and lien to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the Holders of particular Securities, and the Securities are hereby subordinated to such senior claim. The parties agree that if the Trustee renders services following an Event of Default under Section 4.01(d) or (e), compensation for such services is intended to constitute administrative expense under any bankruptcy law.

Section 5.07 *Right of Trustee to Rely on Officers' Certificate, etc.* Subject to Section 5.01 and Section 5.02, whenever in the administration of the trusts of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee, and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

Section 5.08 *Persons Eligible for Appointment as Trustee.* The Trustee for each series of Securities hereunder shall at all times be a corporation which is eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and which has (or which is a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary, directly or indirectly, of a bank holding company which has) a combined capital and surplus of \$50,000,000. If such corporation or holding company publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of a Federal, State or District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation or holding company shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published.

Section 5.09 *Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor Trustee.* (a) The Trustee, or any trustee or trustees hereafter appointed, may at any time resign with respect to one or more or all series of Securities by giving written notice of resignation to the Issuer. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Issuer shall promptly appoint a successor trustee or trustees with respect to the applicable series by written instrument in duplicate, executed by authority of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee or trustees. If no successor Trustee shall have been so appointed with respect to any series and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition, at the expense of the Issuer, any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of the applicable series for at least six months may, subject to the provisions of Section 4.12, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor Trustee. Such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor Trustee.

(b) In case at any time any of the following shall occur:

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 with respect to any series of Securities after written request therefor by the Issuer or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of such series for at least six months;

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(a) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Issuer or by any Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or a receiver or liquidator of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation; then, in any such case, the Issuer may remove the Trustee with respect to the applicable series of Securities and appoint a successor trustee for such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor Trustee, or, subject to Section 315(e) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security or Securities of such series for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to such series. Such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to Securities of such series and appoint a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series by delivering to the Trustee so removed, to the successor Trustee so appointed and to the Issuer the evidence provided in Section 6.01 of the action in that regard taken by the Securityholders.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee with respect to any series and any appointment of a successor trustee with respect to such series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section 5.09 shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 5.10.

Section 5.10 *Acceptance of Appointment by Successor*. Any successor Trustee appointed as provided in Section 5.09 shall execute and deliver to the Issuer and to its predecessor Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Trustee with respect to all or any applicable series shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all rights, powers, duties and obligations with respect to such series of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as Trustee for such series hereunder. On the written request of the Issuer or of the successor Trustee, upon payment of its charges then unpaid, the Trustee ceasing to act shall, subject to Section 5.06, pay over to the successor Trustee all monies at the time held by it hereunder and shall execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers, duties and obligations. Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Issuer shall execute any and all instruments in writing for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights and powers. Any Trustee ceasing to act shall, nevertheless, retain a prior claim upon all property or funds held or collected by such Trustee to secure any amounts then due it pursuant to the provisions of Section 5.06.

If a successor Trustee is appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Issuer, the predecessor Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any applicable series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto which shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series as to which the predecessor Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the predecessor Trustee, and shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be Trustee of a trust or trusts under separate indentures.

Upon acceptance of appointment by any successor Trustee as provided in this Section 5.10, the Issuer shall mail notice thereof by first-class mail to the Holders of Securities of any series for which such successor Trustee is acting as Trustee at their last addresses as they shall appear in the Security register. If the acceptance of appointment is substantially contemporaneous with the resignation, then the notice called for by the preceding sentence may be combined with the notice called for by Section 5.09. If the Issuer fails to mail such notice within 10 days after acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee, the successor Trustee shall cause such notice to be mailed at the expense of the Issuer.

Section 5.11 *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business of Trustee.* Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall be eligible under the provisions of Section 5.08, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding.

In case at the time such successor to the Trustee shall succeed to the trusts created by this Indenture any of the Securities of any series shall have been authenticated but not delivered, any such successor to the Trustee may adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee and deliver such Securities so authenticated; and, in case at that time any of the Securities of any series shall not have been authenticated, any successor to the Trustee may authenticate such Securities either in the name of any predecessor hereunder or in the name of the successor Trustee; and in all such cases such certificate shall have the full force which it is anywhere in the Securities of such series or in this Indenture provided that the certificate of the Trustee shall have; provided, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities of any series in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

Section 5.12 *Reports to the Trustee.* The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto. If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall, within sixty days after each May 15 following the date of the initial issuance of Securities under this Indenture deliver to Holders a brief report, dated as of such May 15, which complies with the provisions of such Section 313(a).

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange, if any, upon which the Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Issuer. The Issuer will promptly notify the Trustee when the Securities are listed on any stock exchange and of any delisting thereof.



**ARTICLE 6  
CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS**

Section 6.01 *Evidence of Action Taken by Securityholders.* Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by a specified percentage in Principal amount of the Securityholders of any or all series may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such specified percentage of Securityholders in person or by agent duly appointed in writing; and, except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee. Proof of execution of any instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 5.01 and Section 5.02) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Issuer, if made in the manner provided in this Article.

Section 6.02 *Proof of Execution of Instruments and of Holding of Securities; Record Date.* Subject to Section 5.01 and Section 5.02, the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder or his agent or proxy may be proved by the certificate of any notary public or other officer authorized to take acknowledgment of deeds, that the Person executing such instrument acknowledged to such notary public or other such officer the execution thereof, or by an affidavit of a witness to such execution sworn to before any such notary public or other officer. Where such execution is by an officer of a corporation or association or a member of a partnership on behalf of such corporation, association or partnership, as the case may be, or by any other Person acting in a representative capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of such Person's authority. The holding of Securities shall be proved by the Security register or by a certificate of the registrar thereof. The Issuer may set a record date for purposes of determining the identity of Holders of Securities of any series entitled to vote or consent to any action referred to in Section 6.01, which record date may be set at any time or from time to time by notice to the Trustee, for any date or dates (in the case of any adjournment or reconsideration) not more than 60 days nor less than five days prior to the proposed date of such vote or consent, and thereafter, notwithstanding any other provisions hereof, only Holders of Securities of such series of record on such record date shall be entitled to so vote or give such consent or revoke such vote or consent.

Section 6.03 *Holders to be Treated as Owners.* Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Issuer, the Trustee and any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee may deem and treat the person in whose name any Security shall be registered upon the Security register for such series as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing thereon) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the Principal of and, subject to the provisions of this Indenture, interest on such Security and for all other purposes, and neither the Issuer nor the Trustee nor any agent of the Issuer or the Trustee shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. All such payments so made to any such person, or upon his order, shall be valid, and, to the extent of the sum or sums so paid, effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability for monies payable upon any such Security.

Section 6.04 *Securities Owned by Issuer Deemed Not Outstanding.* In determining whether the Holders of the requisite aggregate Principal amount of Outstanding Securities of any or all series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, Securities which are owned by the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities with respect to which such determination is being made or by any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities with respect to which such determination is being made shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver only Securities as to which the Trustee has received written notice are so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Issuer or any other obligor upon the Securities or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer or any other obligor on the Securities. In case of a dispute as to such right, the advice of counsel shall be full protection in respect of any decision made by the Trustee in accordance with such advice. Upon request of the Trustee, the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee promptly an Officers' Certificate listing and identifying all Securities, if any, known by the Issuer to be owned or held by or for the account of any of the above-described persons; and, subject to Section 5.01 and Section 5.02, the Trustee shall be entitled to accept such Officers' Certificate as conclusive evidence of the facts therein set forth and of the fact that all Securities not listed therein are Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination.

Section 6.05 *Right of Revocation of Action Taken*. At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 6.01, of the taking of any action by the Holders of the percentage in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any Holder of a Security the serial number of which is shown by the evidence to be included among the serial numbers of the Securities the Holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice at the Corporate Trust Office and upon proof of holding as provided in this Article, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the Holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders and owners of such Security and of any Securities issued in exchange or substitution therefor, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon any such Security. Any action taken by the Holders of the percentage in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of all the Securities affected by such action.

## ARTICLE 7 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 7.01 *Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders*. The Issuer, when authorized by a resolution of its Board of Directors certified to the Trustee, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for one or more of the following purposes:

(a) to evidence the succession of another corporation to the Issuer, or successive successions, and the assumption by the successor corporation of the covenants, agreements and obligations of the Issuer pursuant to Article 8;

(b) (i) to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture, (ii) to conform the terms of Securities to the description thereof in the prospectus and prospectus supplement (or similar offering document) offering such Securities or (iii) to make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under this Indenture or under any supplemental indenture as the Board of Directors may deem necessary or desirable and which shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of the Securities in any material respect;

(c) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Section 2.01 and Section 2.03;

(d) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 5.10;

(e) to comply with any requirements of the Commission in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939;

(f) to provide for uncertificated or Unregistered Securities and to make all appropriate changes for such purpose;

(g) to make any change that would not reasonably be expected to adversely affect the rights of any Holder in any material respect;

(h) to add to the covenants of the Issuer such new covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions as its Board of Directors shall consider to be for the protection of the Holders of Securities, and with respect to which the Trustee has received an Opinion of Counsel to a similar effect, and to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an Event of Default; provided, that in respect of any such additional covenant, restriction, condition or provision such supplemental indenture may provide for a particular period of grace after default (which period may be shorter or longer than that allowed in the case of other defaults) or may provide for an immediate enforcement upon such an Event of Default or may limit the remedies available to the Trustee upon such an Event of Default or may limit the right of the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series to waive such an Event of Default; or

(i) to make any change so long as no Securities are Outstanding.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Issuer in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations which may be therein contained and to accept the conveyance, transfer, assignment, mortgage or pledge of any property thereunder, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this section may be executed without the consent of the Holders of any of the Securities at the time outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 7.02.

*Section 7.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders.* With the consent (evidenced as provided in Article 6) of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of all series affected by such supplemental indenture (voting as one class), the Issuer, when authorized by a resolution of its Board of Directors, and the Trustee may, from time to time and at any time, enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each such series; provided, that no such supplemental indenture shall without the consent of each Holder affected thereby:

- (i) change the stated maturity of the Principal of, or the time of payment of any installment of interest on, such Holder's Security;
- (ii) reduce the Principal thereof or the rate of interest thereon, or any premium payable with respect thereto;
- (iii) change any place of payment where, or the currency in which, any Security or any premium or the interest thereon is payable;
- (iv) change the provisions for calculating any redemption or repurchase price, including the definitions relating thereto;
- (v) make any change to Section 4.07 or Section 4.10 (except to include other provisions subject to Section 4.10);
- (vi) reduce the percentage in Principal amount of outstanding Securities of the relevant series the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, for any waiver of compliance with any provisions of this Indenture or any defaults and their consequences provided for in this Indenture;
- (vii) alter or impair the right to convert any Security at the rate and upon the terms provided in Article 12;
- (viii) waive a default in the payment of Principal of or interest on any Security of such Holder (except pursuant to a rescission of acceleration pursuant to Section 4.01);
- (ix) adversely affect the rights of such Holder under any mandatory redemption or repurchase provision or any right of redemption or repurchase at the option of such Holder;
- (x) modify any of the provisions of this Section 7.02, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each outstanding Security affected thereby;

(xi) modify Article 13 of this Indenture or the definition of "Senior Indebtedness" in Article 1 hereof in a manner adverse to Holders of any series of Securities; or

(xii) change or waive any provision that, pursuant to a board resolution or indenture supplemental hereto establishing the terms of one or more series of Securities, is prohibited to be so changed or waived.

Upon the written request of the Issuer, accompanied by a copy of a resolution of the Board of Directors certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Issuer authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders as aforesaid and other documents, if any, required by Section 6.01, the Trustee shall join with the Issuer in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion, but shall not be obligated to, enter into such supplemental indenture.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders under this section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Issuer and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Issuer shall mail a notice thereof by first class mail to the Holders of Securities of each series affected thereby at their addresses as they shall appear on the registry books of the Issuer, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture. Any failure of the Issuer to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

*Section 7.03 Effect of Supplemental Indenture.* Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions hereof, this Indenture shall be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Holders of Securities of each series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

*Section 7.04 Documents to Be Given to Trustee.* The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 5.01 and Section 5.02, may receive an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article 7 complies with the applicable provisions of this Indenture.

*Section 7.05 Notation on Securities in Respect of Supplemental Indentures.* Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee for such series as to any matter provided for by such supplemental indenture or as to any action taken at any such meeting. If the Issuer or the Trustee shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Issuer, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of such series then outstanding.

**ARTICLE 8**  
**CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, SALE OR CONVEYANCE**

Section 8.01 *Issuer May Consolidate, etc., on Certain Terms.* The Issuer covenants that it will not merge or consolidate with any other Person or sell, convey, transfer, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its property and assets to any Person (other than a consolidation with or merger with or into or a sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition to a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary with a positive net worth; *provided* that, in connection with any such merger of the Issuer with a Wholly-Owned Subsidiary, no consideration (other than common stock) in the surviving person or the Issuer shall be issued or distributed to the stockholders of the Issuer), unless (xv) either (x) the Issuer shall be the continuing corporation, or the successor corporation or (y) the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Issuer is merged or that acquires by sale or conveyance substantially all the assets of the Issuer (if other than the Issuer) shall be a corporation or limited liability company organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America or any jurisdiction thereof and shall expressly assume the due and punctual payment of the Principal of and interest on all the Securities, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all of the covenants and conditions of this Indenture to be performed or observed by the Issuer, by supplemental indenture satisfactory to the Trustee, executed and delivered to the Trustee by such Person, (xvi) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing and (xvii) the Issuer delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that such consolidation, merger or transfer and such supplemental indenture complies with this Section 8.01 and that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to such transaction have been complied with; *provided*, however, that the foregoing limitations shall not apply if, in the good faith determination of the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be evidenced by a board resolution certified to the Trustee, the principal purpose of such transaction is to change the state of incorporation of the Issuer; and *provided further* that any such transaction shall not have as one of its purposes the evasion of the foregoing limitations.

Section 8.02 *Successor Corporation Substituted.* In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition, and following such an assumption by the successor Person, such successor Person shall succeed to and be substituted for the Issuer, with the same effect as if it had been named herein. Such successor Person may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Issuer prior to such succession any or all of the Securities issuable hereunder which theretofore shall not have been signed by the Issuer and delivered to the Trustee; and, upon the order of such successor Person instead of the Issuer and subject to all the terms, conditions and limitations in this Indenture prescribed, the Trustee, pursuant to the terms hereof, shall authenticate and shall deliver any Securities which previously shall have been signed and delivered by the officers of the Issuer to the Trustee for authentication, and any Securities which such successor Person thereafter shall cause to be signed and delivered to the Trustee for that purpose. All of the Securities so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Indenture as the Securities theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Indenture as though all of such Securities had been issued at the date of the execution hereof.

In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer, lease or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

Upon the assumption by the successor Person in the manner described in this Article, the Issuer shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

**ARTICLE 9**  
**DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE**

Section 9.01 *Defeasance Within One Year of Payment*. Except as otherwise provided in this Section 9.01, the Issuer may terminate its obligations under the Securities of any series and this Indenture with respect to Securities of such series if:

(i) all Securities of such series previously authenticated and delivered (other than destroyed, lost or wrongfully taken Securities of such series that have been replaced or Securities of such series for whose payment money or securities have theretofore been held in trust and thereafter repaid to the Issuer, as provided in Section 9.05) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation and the Issuer has paid all sums payable by it hereunder; or

(ii) (A) the Securities of such series mature within one year or all of them are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for giving the notice of redemption, (B) the Issuer irrevocably deposits in trust with the Trustee, as trust funds solely for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities for that purpose, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee), without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all Federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series to maturity or redemption, as the case may be, and to pay all other sums payable by it hereunder and (C) the Issuer delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

With respect to the foregoing clause (i), only the Issuer's obligations under Sections 5.06 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive. With respect to the foregoing clause (ii), only the Issuer's obligations in Sections 2.03 through 2.11, 3.02, 5.06, 5.09 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive until such Securities of such series are no longer outstanding. Thereafter, only the Issuer's obligations in Sections 5.06 and 9.05 in respect of the Securities of such series shall survive. After any such irrevocable deposit, the Trustee shall acknowledge in writing the discharge of the Issuer's obligations under the Securities of such series and this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series except for those surviving obligations specified above.

Section 9.02 *Defeasance*. Except as provided below, the Issuer will be deemed to have paid and will be discharged from any and all obligations in respect of the Securities of any series and the provisions of this Indenture will no longer be in effect with respect to the Securities of such series (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Issuer, shall execute instruments in form and substance satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee acknowledging the same) if the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(i) the Issuer has irrevocably deposited in trust with the Trustee as trust funds specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, Holders of the Securities of such series, for payment of the Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee) without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay and discharge the Principal of and accrued interest on the outstanding Securities of such series to maturity or earlier redemption (irrevocably provided for under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee), as the case may be;

(ii) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Issuer is a party or by which it is bound;

(iii) no default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit;

(iv) the Issuer shall have delivered to the Trustee (1) either (x) a ruling directed to the Trustee received from the Internal Revenue Service to the effect that the Holders of the Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the Issuer's exercise of its option under this Section 9.02 and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred or (y) an Opinion of Counsel to the same effect as the ruling described in clause (x) above and based upon a change in law and (2) an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of the Securities of such series have a valid security interest in the trust funds subject to no prior liens under the UCC; and

(v) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section 9.02 of the Securities of such series have been complied with.

The Issuer's obligations in Sections 2.03 through 2.11, 3.02, 5.06, 5.09 and 9.05 with respect to the Securities of such series shall survive until such Securities are no longer outstanding. Thereafter, only the Issuer's obligations in Sections 5.06 and 9.05 shall survive.

Section 9.03 *Covenant Defeasance*. The Issuer may omit to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Sections 3.04, 3.06 or 3.08 (or any other specific covenant relating to the Securities of any series provided for in a Board Resolution or supplemental indenture pursuant to Section 2.03 which may by its terms be defeased pursuant to this Section 9.03), and such omission shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default under clause (c) of Section 4.01, with respect to the outstanding Securities of such series if:

(i) the Issuer has irrevocably deposited in trust with the Trustee as trust funds solely for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, for payment of the Principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of such series, money or U.S. Government Obligations or a combination thereof in an amount sufficient (unless such funds consist solely of money, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee) without consideration of any reinvestment and after payment of all Federal, state and local taxes or other charges and assessments in respect thereof payable by the Trustee, to pay and discharge the Principal of and interest on the outstanding Securities of such series to maturity or earlier redemption (irrevocably provided for under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee), as the case may be;

(ii) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Issuer is a party or by which it is bound;

(iii) no default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit;

(iv) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that (A) the Holders of the Securities of such series have a valid security interest in the trust funds subject to no prior liens under the UCC and (B) such Holders will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred; and

(v) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, in each case stating that all conditions precedent provided for herein relating to the covenant defeasance contemplated by this Section 9.03 of the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Section 9.04 *Application of Trust Money*. Subject to Section 9.05, the Trustee or Paying Agent shall hold in trust money or U.S. Government Obligations deposited with it pursuant to 9.01, 9.02, 9.03, as the case may be, in respect of the Securities of any series and shall apply the deposited money and the proceeds from deposited U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with the Securities of such series and this Indenture to the payment of Principal of and interest on the Securities of such series; provided that such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Issuer shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to 9.01, 9.02, 9.03, as the case may be, or the Principal and interest received in respect thereof, other than any such tax, fee or other charge that by law is for the account of the Holders.



Section 9.05 *Repayment to Issuer*. Subject to Sections 5.06 and 9.01, the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall promptly pay to the Issuer upon request set forth in an Officers' Certificate any money held by them at any time and not required to make payments hereunder and thereupon shall be relieved from all liability with respect to such money. Subject to applicable escheat or abandoned property laws, the Trustee and the Paying Agent shall pay to the Issuer upon written request any money held by them and required to make payments hereunder under this Indenture that remains unclaimed for two years; *provided* that the Trustee or such Paying Agent before being required to make any payment shall cause to be published at the expense of the Issuer once in an Authorized Newspaper or mail to each Holder entitled to such money at such Holder's address (as set forth in the register) notice that such money remains unclaimed and that after a date specified therein (which shall be at least 30 days from the date of such publication or mailing) any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Issuer. After payment to the Issuer, Holders entitled to such money must look to the Issuer for payment as unsecured general creditors unless an abandoned property law designates another Person, and all liability of the Trustee and such Paying Agent with respect to such money shall cease.

#### **ARTICLE 10 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

Section 10.01 *Incorporators, Stockholders, Officers and Directors Exempt from Individual Liability*. No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any incorporator, as such, or against any past, present or future stockholder, officer, director or employee, as such, of the Issuer or of any successor Person thereof, either directly or through the Issuer or any successor Person thereof, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders thereof and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 10.02 *Provisions of Indenture for the Sole Benefit of Parties and Securityholders*. Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, expressed or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any person, firm or corporation, other than the parties hereto and their successors and the Holders of the Securities, any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture or under any covenant or provision herein contained, all such covenants and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and their successors and of the Holders of the Securities.

Section 10.03 *Successors and Assigns of Issuer Bound by Indenture*. All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements contained in this Indenture by or on behalf of the Issuer shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 10.04 *Notices and Demands on Issuer, Trustee and Securityholders.* Any notice or demand which by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given or served by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities to or on the Issuer may be given or served by being deposited postage prepaid, first-class mail (except as otherwise specifically provided herein) addressed (until another address of the Issuer is filed by the Issuer with the Trustee) to Motus GI Holdings, Inc. at 1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor, Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301, Attention: Chief Financial Officer. Any notice, direction, request or demand by the Issuer or any Securityholder to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made at the Corporate Trust Office.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder entitled thereto, at such Holder's last address as it appears in the Security register. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service, it shall be impracticable to mail notice to the Issuer and Securityholders when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any manner of giving such notice as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

Section 10.05 *Officers' Certificates and Opinions of Counsel; Statements to be Contained Therein.* Upon any application or demand by the Issuer to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include (a) a statement that the person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition, (b) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based, (c) a statement that, in the opinion of such person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with and (d) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Any certificate, statement or opinion of an officer of the Issuer may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of or representations by counsel, unless such officer knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous. Any certificate, statement or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, information with respect to which is in the possession of the Issuer, upon the certificate, statement or opinion of or representations by an officer or officers of the Issuer, unless such counsel knows that the certificate, statement or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous.

Any certificate, statement or opinion of an officer of the Issuer or of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to accounting matters, upon a certificate or opinion of or representations by an accountant or firm of accountants in the employ of the Issuer, unless such officer or counsel, as the case may be, knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the accounting matters upon which his certificate, statement or opinion may be based as aforesaid are erroneous, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know that the same are erroneous.

Any certificate or opinion of any independent firm of public accountants filed with the Trustee shall contain a statement that such firm is independent.

Section 10.06 *Payments Due on Saturdays, Sundays and Holidays*. If the date of maturity of interest on or Principal of the Securities of any series or the date fixed for redemption or repayment of any such Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or Principal need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the date of maturity or the date fixed for redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such date.

Section 10.07 *Conflict of Any Provision of Indenture with Trust Indenture Act of 1939*. If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with another provision incorporated in this Indenture by operation of Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, such incorporated provision shall control.

Section 10.08 *New York Law to Govern*. This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract under the laws of the State of New York, and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of such State.

Section 10.09 *Counterparts*. This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original; but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 10.10 *Effect of Headings*. The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

**ARTICLE 11**  
**REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES**

Section 11.01 *Applicability of Article*. The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to the Securities of any series which are redeemable before their maturity except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series.

Section 11.02 *Notice of Redemption; Partial Redemptions*. Notice of redemption to the Holders of Securities of any series to be redeemed as a whole or in part at the option of the Issuer shall be given by mailing notice of such redemption by first class mail, postage prepaid, at least 30 days and not more than 60 days prior to the date fixed for redemption to such Holders of Securities of such series at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the registry books. Any notice which is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the Holder receives the notice. Failure to give notice by mail, or any defect in the notice to the Holder of any Security of a series designated for redemption as a whole or in part shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Security of such series.

The notice of redemption to each such Holder shall specify the CUSIP numbers of such Securities to be redeemed, the Principal amount of each Security of such series held by such Holder to be redeemed, the date fixed for redemption, the redemption price, the place or places of payment, that payment will be made upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in such notice and that on and after said date interest thereon or on the portions thereof to be redeemed will cease to accrue. In case any Security of a series is to be redeemed in part only the notice of redemption shall state the portion of the Principal amount thereof to be redeemed, the method the Trustee shall use to determine such Securities to be redeemed as specified in the last paragraph of this Section 11.02, if applicable, and shall state that on and after the date fixed for redemption, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in Principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

The notice of redemption of Securities of any series to be redeemed at the option of the Issuer shall be given by the Issuer or, at the Issuer's written request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Issuer.

By 11:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the redemption date specified in the notice of redemption given as provided in this Section, the Issuer will deposit with the Trustee or with one or more paying agents (or, if the Issuer is acting as its own paying agent, set aside, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 3.03) an amount of money sufficient to redeem on the redemption date all the Securities of such series so called for redemption at the appropriate redemption price, together with accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption. If less than all the outstanding Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Issuer will deliver to the Trustee at least 70 days (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the date fixed for redemption an Officers' Certificate stating the aggregate Principal amount of Securities to be redeemed.

In the case of the redemption of all of the Securities of a series outstanding, the Issuer shall notify the Trustee in writing of the redemption date 45 days (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) prior to the redemption date.

If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Trustee shall select, pro rata or by lot or in such manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair, Securities of such series to be redeemed in whole or in part. Securities of a series may be redeemed in part in multiples equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series or any multiple thereof. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Issuer in writing of the Securities of such series selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities of such series selected for partial redemption, the Principal amount thereof to be redeemed. For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities of any series shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the Principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 11.03 *Payment of Securities Called for Redemption*. If notice of redemption has been given as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption, and on and after said date (unless the Issuer shall default in the payment of such Securities at the redemption price, together with interest accrued to said date) interest on the Securities or portions of Securities so called for redemption shall cease to accrue and, except as provided in Section 5.05 and Section 9.04, such Securities shall cease from and after the date fixed for redemption to be entitled to any benefit or security under this Indenture, and the Holders thereof shall have no right in respect of such Securities except the right to receive the redemption price thereof and unpaid interest to the date fixed for redemption. On presentation and surrender of such Securities at a place of payment specified in said notice, said Securities or the specified portions thereof shall be paid and redeemed by the Issuer at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption; provided that any semiannual payment of interest becoming due on the date fixed for redemption shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities registered as such on the relevant record date subject to the terms and provisions of Section 2.07 hereof.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the Principal shall, until paid or duly provided for, bear interest from the date fixed for redemption at the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security) borne by the Security.

Upon presentation of any Security redeemed in part only, the Issuer shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to or on the order of the Holder thereof, at the expense of the Issuer, a new Security or Securities of such series, of authorized denominations, in Principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented, pursuant to Sections 2.04, 2.05 and 2.06.

Section 11.04 *Exclusion of Certain Securities from Eligibility for Selection for Redemption*. Securities shall be excluded from eligibility for selection for redemption if they are identified by registration and certificate number in a written statement signed by an authorized officer of the Issuer and delivered to the Trustee at least 40 days prior to the last date on which notice of redemption may be given as being owned of record and beneficially by, and not pledged or hypothecated by either (a) the Issuer or (b) an entity specifically identified in such written statement directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Issuer.

Section 11.05 *Conversion Arrangement On Call For Redemption*. In connection with any redemption of Securities, the Issuer shall deposit the amount due in connection with such redemption as required by Section 11.02 or it may arrange for the purchase and conversion of any Securities called for redemption by an agreement with one or more investment bankers or other purchasers to purchase such Securities and to make the deposit required of it by Section 11.02 on its behalf by paying to the Trustee or the Paying Agent in trust for the Securityholders, on or before 10:00 a.m. New York time on the redemption date, an amount no less than the redemption price, together with interest, if any, accrued to the redemption date of such Securities, in immediately available funds. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Article 11, the obligation of the Issuer to pay the redemption price of such Securities, including all accrued interest, if any, shall be deemed to be satisfied and discharged to the extent such amount is so paid by such purchasers. If such an agreement is entered into, any Securities not duly surrendered for conversion by the Holders thereof may, at the option of the Issuer, be deemed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, acquired by such purchasers from such Holders and (notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in Article 12) surrendered by such purchasers for conversion, all as of immediately prior to the close of business on the last day on which Securities of such series called for redemption may be converted in accordance with this Indenture and the terms of such Securities, subject to payment of the above amount aforesaid. The Trustee or the Paying Agent shall hold and pay to the Securityholders whose Securities are selected for redemption any such amount paid to it in the same manner as it would monies deposited with it by the Issuer for the redemption of Securities. Without the Trustee's and the Paying Agent's prior written consent, no arrangement between the Issuer and such purchasers for the purchase and conversion of any Securities shall increase or otherwise affect any of the powers, duties, responsibilities or obligations of the Trustee as set forth in this Indenture, and the Issuer agrees to indemnify the Trustee from, and hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense arising out of or in connection with any such arrangement for the purchase and conversion of any Securities between the Issuer and such purchasers, including the costs and expenses incurred by the Trustee and the Paying Agent in the defense of any claim or liability arising out of or in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers, duties, responsibilities or obligations under this Indenture.

## **ARTICLE 12 CONVERSION OF SECURITIES**

Section 12.01 *Applicability of Article*. Securities of any series which are convertible into Capital Stock at the option of the Securityholder shall be convertible in accordance with their terms and (unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article. Each reference in this Article 12 to "a Security" or "the Securities" refers to the Securities of the particular series that is convertible into Capital Stock. Each reference in this Article to "Capital Stock" into which Securities of any series are convertible refers to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible in accordance with their terms (as specified as contemplated by Section 2.03). If more than one series of Securities with conversion privileges are outstanding at any time, the provisions of this Article 12 shall be applied separately to each such series.

Section 12.02 *Right of Securityholders to Convert Securities*. Subject to and upon compliance with the terms of the Securities and the provisions of Section 11.05 and this Article 12, at the option of the Holder thereof, any Security of any series of any authorized denomination, or any portion of the Principal amount thereof which is \$1,000 or any integral multiple of \$1,000, may, at any time during the period specified in the Securities of such series, or in case such Security or portion thereof shall have been called for redemption, then in respect of such Security or portion thereof until and including, but not after (unless the Issuer shall default in payment due upon the redemption thereof) the close of business on the Business Day prior to the date fixed for redemption except that in the case of redemption at the option of the Securityholder, if specified in the terms of such Securities, such right shall terminate upon receipt of written notice of the exercise of such option, be converted into duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable shares of Capital Stock, as specified in such Security, at the conversion rate for each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities (such initial conversion rate reflecting an initial conversion price specified in such Security) in effect on the conversion date, or, in case an adjustment in the conversion rate has taken place pursuant to the provisions of Section 12.05, then at the applicable conversion rate as so adjusted, upon surrender of the Security or Securities, the Principal amount of which is so to be converted, to the Issuer at any time during usual business hours at the office or agency to be maintained by it in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.02, accompanied by a written notice of election to convert as provided in Section 12.03 and, if so required by the Issuer and the Trustee, by a written instrument or instruments of transfer in form satisfactory to the Issuer and the Trustee duly executed by the registered Holder or his attorney duly authorized in writing. All Securities surrendered for conversion shall, if surrendered to the Issuer or any conversion agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation and cancelled by it, or shall, if surrendered to the Trustee, be cancelled by it, as provided in Section 2.10.

The initial conversion price or conversion rate in respect of a series of Securities shall be as specified in the Securities of such series. The conversion price or conversion rate will be subject to adjustment on the terms set forth in Section 12.05 or such other or different terms, if any, as may be specified by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series. Provisions of this Indenture that apply to conversion of all of a Security also apply to conversion of a portion of it.

Section 12.03 *Issuance of Shares of Capital Stock on Conversion* As promptly as practicable after the surrender, as herein provided, of any Security or Securities for conversion, the Issuer shall deliver or cause to be delivered at its said office or agency to or upon the written order of the Holder of the Security or Securities so surrendered a certificate or certificates representing the number of duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable shares of Capital Stock into which such Security or Securities may be converted in accordance with the terms thereof and the provisions of this Article 12. Prior to delivery of such certificate or certificates, the Issuer shall require a written notice at its said office or agency from the Holder of the Security or Securities so surrendered stating that the Holder irrevocably elects to convert such Security or Securities, or, if less than the entire Principal amount thereof is to be converted, stating the portion thereof to be converted. Such notice shall also state the name or names (with address and social security or other taxpayer identification number) in which said certificate or certificates are to be issued. Such conversion shall be deemed to have been made at the time that such Security or Securities shall have been surrendered for conversion and such notice shall have been received by the Issuer or the Trustee, the rights of the Holder of such Security or Securities as a Securityholder shall cease at such time, the person or persons entitled to receive the shares of Capital Stock upon conversion of such Security or Securities shall be treated for all purposes as having become the record holder or holders of such shares of Capital Stock at such time and such conversion shall be at the conversion rate in effect at such time. In the case of any Security of any series which is converted in part only, upon such conversion, the Issuer shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder thereof, as requested by such Holder, a new Security or Securities of such series of authorized denominations in aggregate Principal amount equal to the unconverted portion of such Security.

If the last day on which a Security may be converted is not a Business Day in a place where a conversion agent is located, the Security may be surrendered to that conversion agent on the next succeeding day that is a Business Day.

The Issuer will not be required to deliver certificates for shares of Capital Stock upon conversion while its stock transfer books are closed for a meeting of shareholders or for the payment of dividends or for any other purpose, but certificates for shares of Capital Stock shall be delivered as soon as the stock transfer books shall again be opened.

Section 12.04 *No Payment or Adjustment for Interest or Dividends.* Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series, Securities surrendered for conversion during the period from the close of business on any regular record date (or special record date for payment of defaulted interest) next preceding any interest payment date to the opening of business on such interest payment date (except Securities called for redemption on a redemption date within such period) when surrendered for conversion must be accompanied by payment of an amount equal to the interest thereon which the registered Holder is to receive on such interest payment date. Payment of interest shall be made, as of such interest payment date or such date, as the case may be, to the Holder of record of the Securities as of such regular, or special record date, as applicable. Except where Securities surrendered for conversion must be accompanied by payment as described above, no interest on converted Securities will be payable by the Issuer on any interest payment date subsequent to the date of conversion. No other payment or adjustment for interest or dividends is to be made upon conversion. Notwithstanding the foregoing, upon conversion of any Original Issue Discount Security, the fixed number of shares of Capital Stock into which such Security is convertible delivered by the Issuer to the Holder thereof shall be applied, first, to pay the accrued original issue discount attributable to the period from the date of issuance to the date of conversion of such Security, and, second, to pay the balance of the Principal amount of such Security.

Section 12.05 *Adjustment of Conversion Rate.* Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.03 for Securities of such series, the conversion rate for Securities in effect at any time shall be subject to adjustment as follows:

(a) In case the Issuer shall (i) declare a dividend or make a distribution on the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible in shares of its Capital Stock, (ii) subdivide the outstanding shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible into a greater number of shares, (iii) combine the outstanding shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible into a smaller number of shares or (iv) issue by reclassification of the shares of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible (including any such reclassification in connection with a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation) any shares, the conversion rate for the Securities of such series in effect at the time of the record subdivision, combination or reclassification, shall be proportionately adjusted so that the Holder of any Security of such series surrendered for conversion after such time shall be entitled to receive the number and kind of shares which he would have owned or have been entitled to receive had such Security been converted immediately prior to such time. Similar adjustments shall be made whenever any event listed above shall occur.



(b) In case the Issuer shall fix a record date for the issuance of rights or warrants to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible entitling them (for a period expiring within 45 days after such record date) to subscribe for or purchase shares of such class of Capital Stock (or securities convertible into shares of such class of Capital Stock) at a price per share (or, in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, having a conversion price per share, after adding thereto the exercise price, computed on the basis of the maximum number of shares of such class of Capital Stock issuable upon conversion of such convertible securities, per share of such class of Capital Stock, so issuable) less than the current market price per share of such class of Capital Stock (as defined in subsection (e) below) on the date on which such issuance was declared or otherwise announced by the Issuer (the “**Determination Date**”), the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities shall be convertible after such record date shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which such Principal amount of Securities was convertible immediately prior to such record date by a fraction, of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock outstanding on the Determination Date plus the number of additional shares of such class of Capital Stock offered for subscription or purchase (or in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, the aggregate number of additional shares of such class of Capital Stock into which the convertible securities so offered are initially convertible), and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock outstanding on the Determination Date plus the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock obtained by dividing the aggregate offering price of the total number of shares so offered (or, in the case of a right or warrant to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock, the aggregate initial conversion price of the convertible securities so offered, after adding thereto the aggregate exercise price of such rights or warrants computed on the basis of the maximum number of shares of such class of Capital Stock issuable upon conversion of such convertible securities) by such current market price. Shares of such class of Capital Stock of the Issuer owned by or held for the account of the Issuer shall not be deemed outstanding for the purpose of any such computation. Such adjustment shall be made successively whenever such a record date is fixed; and to the extent that shares of such class of Capital Stock are not delivered (or securities convertible into shares of such class of Capital Stock are not delivered) after the expiration of such rights or warrants (or, in the case of rights or warrants to purchase securities convertible into such class of Capital Stock once exercised, the expiration of the conversion right of such securities) the conversion rate shall be readjusted to the conversion rate which would then be in effect had the adjustments made upon the issuance of such rights or warrants (or securities convertible into shares) been made upon the basis of delivery of only the number of shares actually delivered. In the event that such rights or warrants are not so issued, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to be the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such record date had not been fixed.

(c) In case the Issuer shall fix a record date for the making of a distribution to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible (including any such distribution made in connection with a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation) of evidences of its indebtedness or assets (excluding any cash dividends paid from retained earnings and dividends payable in Capital Stock for which adjustment is made pursuant to subsection (a) above or (d) below) or subscription rights or warrants (excluding subscription rights or warrants to purchase the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible), the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which each \$1,000 Principal amount of Securities of such series shall be convertible after such record date shall be determined by multiplying the number of shares of such class of Capital Stock into which such Principal amount of Securities was convertible immediately prior to such record date by a fraction, of which the numerator shall be the fair market value of the assets of the Issuer, after deducting therefrom all liabilities of the Issuer and all preferences (including accrued but unpaid dividends) in respect of classes of Capital Stock having a preference with respect to the assets of the Issuer over such class of Capital Stock (all as determined by the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be conclusive, and described in a certificate signed by chairman of the Issuer’s Board of Directors, its president, any vice president, its treasurer, any assistant treasurer, its secretary or any assistant secretary, filed with the Trustee and each conversion agent) on such record date, and of which the denominator shall be such fair market value after deducting therefrom such liabilities and preferences, less the fair market value (as determined by the Board of Directors, whose determination shall be conclusive, and described in a statement filed with the Trustee and each conversion agent) of the assets or evidences of indebtedness, so distributed or of such subscription rights or warrants applicable, so distributed. Such adjustment shall be made successively whenever such a record date is fixed; and in the event that such distribution is not so made, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such record date had not been fixed.

(d) In case the Issuer shall, by dividend or otherwise, distribute to all holders of its Capital Stock cash (excluding any dividend or distribution in connection with the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Issuer, whether voluntary or involuntary), then, in such case, unless the Issuer elects to reserve such cash for distribution to the Holders of the Securities upon the conversion of the Securities so that any such Holder converting Securities will receive upon such conversion, in addition to the shares of Capital Stock to which such Holder is entitled, the amount of cash which such Holder would have received if such Holder had, immediately prior to the record date for such distribution of cash, converted its Securities into Capital Stock, the conversion rate shall be adjusted so that the same shall equal the rate determined by multiplying the conversion rate in effect immediately prior to the record date by a fraction of which the denominator shall be the current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in Section 12.05(e) on the record date less the amount of cash so distributed (and not excluded as provided above) applicable to one share of Capital Stock and the numerator shall be such current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in Section 12.05(e)), such adjustment to be effective immediately prior to the opening of business on the day following the record date; provided, however, that in the event the portion of the cash so distributed applicable to one share of Capital Stock is equal to or greater than the current market price of the Capital Stock (determined as provided in (e)Section 12.05(e)) on the record date, in lieu of the foregoing adjustment, adequate provision shall be made so that each Securityholder shall have the right to receive upon conversion the amount of cash such Holder would have received had such Holder converted each Security on the record date. If such dividend or distribution is not so paid or made, the conversion rate shall again be adjusted to be the conversion rate which would then be in effect if such dividend or distribution had not been declared.

(e) For the purpose of any computation under subsections (b) and (d) above and Section 12.06, the current market price per share of the Capital Stock on any date as of which such price is to be computed shall mean the average of the Closing Prices for the 30 consecutive Business Days commencing 45 Business Days before such date.

(f) No adjustment in the conversion rate shall be required unless such adjustment would require a cumulative increase or decrease of at least 1% in such rate; provided, however, that any adjustments which by reason of this subsection (f) are not required to be made shall be carried forward and taken into account in any subsequent adjustment; and *provided further*, that adjustments shall be required and made in accordance with the provisions of this Article 12 (other than this subsection (f)) not later than such time as may be required in order to preserve the tax-free nature of a States income tax purposes to the Holders of Securities or the class of Capital Stock into which such Securities are convertible. All calculations under this Article 12 shall be made to the nearest cent or to the nearest one-thousandth of a share, as the case may be. Anything in this Section 12.05 to the contrary notwithstanding, the Issuer shall be entitled to make such adjustments in the conversion rate, in addition to those required by this Section 12.05, as it in its discretion shall determine to be advisable in order that any stock dividend, subdivision of shares, distribution of rights to purchase stock or securities, or distribution of securities convertible into or exchangeable for stock hereafter made by the Issuer to its shareholders shall not be taxable for United States income tax purposes.

(g) Whenever the conversion rate is adjusted, as herein provided, the Issuer shall promptly file with the Trustee and with the office or agency maintained by the Issuer for the conversion of Securities of such series pursuant to Section 3.02, a certificate of a firm of independent public accountants of recognized national standing selected by the Board of Directors (who may be the regular accountants employed by the Issuer) setting forth the conversion rate after such adjustment and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment and a computation thereof. Such certificate shall be conclusive evidence of the correctness of such adjustment. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be under any duty or responsibility with respect to any such certificate or any facts or computations set forth therein, except to exhibit said certificate from time to time to any Securityholder of such series desiring to inspect the same. The Issuer shall promptly cause a notice setting forth the adjusted conversion rate to be mailed to the Holders of Securities of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the register of the Issuer.

(h) In the event that at any time, as a result of shares of any other class of Capital Stock becoming issuable in exchange or substitution for or in lieu of shares of the class of Capital Stock into which such Securities are convertible or as a result of an adjustment made pursuant to subsection (a) above, the Holder of any Security of such series thereafter surrendered for conversion shall become entitled to receive any shares of the Issuer other than shares of the class of Capital Stock into which the Issuer of such series are convertible, thereafter the number of such other shares so receivable upon conversion of any Security shall be subject to adjustment from time to time in a manner and on terms as nearly equivalent as practicable to the provisions with respect to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible contained in subsections (a) to (f), inclusive, above, and the provisions of this Article 12 with respect to the class of Capital Stock into which the Securities of such series are convertible shall apply on like terms to any such other shares.

(i) The conversion rate with respect to any Original Issue Discount Security, the terms of which provide for convertibility, shall not be adjusted during the term of such Original Issue Discount Security for accrued original issue discount.

(j) In the event that the Securities of any series are convertible into more than one class of Capital Stock, the provisions of this Section 12.05 shall apply separately to events affecting each such class.

Section 12.06 *No Fractional Shares to Be Issued*. No fractional shares of Capital Stock shall be issued upon conversions of Securities. If more than one Security of any series shall be surrendered for conversion at one time by the same Holder, the number of full shares which shall be issuable upon conversion thereof shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate Principal amount of the Securities of such series (or specified portions thereof to the extent permitted hereby) so surrendered. Instead of a fraction of a share of Capital Stock which would otherwise be issuable upon conversion of any Security or Securities (or specified portions thereof), the Issuer shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction of a share in an amount equal to the same fractional interest of the current market price (as defined in Section 12.05) per share of Capital Stock on the Business Day next preceding the day of conversion.

Section 12.07 *Preservation of Conversion Rights Upon Consolidation, Merger, Sale or Conveyance*. In case of any consolidation of the Issuer with, or merger of the Issuer into, any other corporation (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Issuer is the continuing corporation), or in the case of any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer, the corporation formed by such consolidation or the corporation into which the Issuer shall have been merged or the corporation which shall have acquired such assets, as the case may be, shall execute and deliver to the Trustee, a supplemental indenture, subject to the provisions of Article 12 and ARTICLE 8 as they relate to supplemental indentures, providing that the Holder of each Security then Outstanding of a series which was convertible into Capital Stock shall have the right thereafter to convert such Security into the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property, including cash, receivable upon such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer by a holder of the number of shares of Capital Stock of the Issuer into which such Securities might have been converted immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer. Such supplemental indenture shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as then in effect and shall provide for adjustments which shall be as nearly equivalent as may be practicable to the adjustments provided for in this Article 12. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be under any responsibility to determine the correctness of any provision contained in any such supplemental indenture relating either to the kind or amount of shares of stock or other securities or property receivable by Securityholders upon the conversion of their Securities after any such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer, or to any adjustment to be made with respect there to and, subject to the provisions of Article 5, may accept as conclusive evidence of the correctness of any such provisions, and shall be protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel with respect thereto. If in the case of any such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer, the stock or other securities and property receivable by a Holder of the Securities includes stock or other securities and property of a corporation other than the successor or purchasing corporation, then such supplemental indenture shall also be executed by such other corporation and shall contain such additional provisions to protect the interests of the Holders of the Securities as the Board of Directors shall reasonably consider necessary. The above provisions of this Section 12.07 shall similarly apply to successive consolidations, mergers, sales or transfers.

Section 12.08 Notice to Security Holders of a Series Prior to Taking Certain Types of Action. With respect to the Securities of any series, in case:

(a) the Issuer shall authorize the issuance to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible of rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase shares of its Capital Stock or of any other right;

(b) the Issuer shall authorize the distribution to all holders of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible of evidences of its indebtedness or assets (except for the exclusions with respect to certain dividends set forth in Section 12.05(e));

(c) of any subdivision, combination or reclassification of the class of Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible or of any consolidation or merger to which the Issuer is a party and for which approval by the shareholders of the Issuer is required, or of the sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer; or

(d) of the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Issuer;

then the Issuer shall cause to be filed with the Trustee and at the office or agency maintained for the purpose of conversion of Securities of such series pursuant to Section 3.02, and shall cause to be mailed to the Holders of Securities of such series, at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the register of the Issuer, at least 10 days prior to the applicable record date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (i) the date as of which the holders of such class of Capital Stock to be entitled to receive any such rights, warrants or distribution are to be determined, or (ii) the date on which any such subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of record of such class of Capital Stock shall be entitled to exchange their Capital Stock of such class for securities or other property, if any, deliverable upon such subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action. The failure to give the notice required by this Section 12.08 or any defect therein shall not affect the legality or validity of any distribution, right, warrant, subdivision, combination, reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer, dissolution, liquidation, winding up or other action, or the vote upon any of the foregoing. Such notice shall also be published by and at the expense of the Issuer not later than the aforesaid filing date at least once in an Authorized Newspaper.

Section 12.09 *Covenant to Reserve Shares for Issuance on Conversion of Securities* The Issuer covenants that at all times it will reserve and keep available out of each class of its authorized Capital Stock, free from preemptive rights, solely for the purpose of issue upon conversion of Securities of any series as herein provided, such number of shares of Capital Stock of such class as shall then be issuable upon the conversion of all Outstanding Securities of such series. The Issuer covenants that an shares of Capital Stock which shall be so issuable shall, when issued or delivered, be duly and validly issued shares of the class of authorized Capital Stock into which Securities of such series are convertible, and shall be fully paid and nonassessable, free of all liens and charges and not subject to preemptive rights and that, upon conversion, the appropriate capital stock accounts of the Issuer will be duly credited.

Section 12.10 *Compliance with Governmental Requirements*. The Issuer covenants that if any shares of Capital Stock required to be reserved for purposes of conversion of Securities hereunder require registration or listing with or approval of any governmental authority under any Federal or State law, pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any national or regional securities exchange on which such Capital Stock is listed at the time of delivery of any shares of such Capital Stock, before such shares may be issued upon conversion, the Issuer will use reasonable efforts to cause such shares to be duly registered, listed or approved, as the case may be.

Section 12.11 *Payment of Taxes Upon Certificates for Shares Issued Upon Conversion*. The issuance of certificates for shares of Capital Stock upon the conversion of Securities shall be made without charge to the converting Securityholders for any tax (including, without limitation, all documentary and stamp taxes) in respect of the issuance and delivery of such certificates, and such certificates shall be issued in the respective names of, or in such names as may be directed by, the Holders of the Securities converted; provided, however, that the Issuer shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issuance and delivery of any such certificate in a name other than that of the Holder of the Security converted, and the Issuer shall not be required to issue or deliver such certificates unless or until the person or persons requesting the issuance thereof shall have paid to the Issuer the amount of such tax or shall have established to the satisfaction of the Issuer that such tax has been paid.

Section 12.12 *Trustee's Duties with Respect to Conversion Provisions*. The Trustee and any conversion agent shall not at any time be under any duty or responsibility to any Securityholder to determine whether any facts exist which may require any adjustment of the conversion rate or conversion price, or with respect to the nature or extent of any such adjustment when made, or with respect to the method employed, or herein or in any supplemental indenture provided to be employed, in making the same. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be accountable with respect to the registration under securities laws, listing, validity or value (or the kind or amount) of any shares of Capital Stock, or of any other securities or property, which may at any time be issued or delivered upon the conversion of any Security; and neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent makes any representation with respect thereto. Neither the Trustee nor any conversion agent shall be responsible for any failure of the Issuer to make any cash payment or to issue, transfer or deliver any shares of stock or stock certificates or other securities or property upon the surrender of any Security for the purpose of conversion; and the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Article 5, and any conversion agent shall not be responsible for any failure of the Issuer to comply with any of the covenants of the Issuer contained in this Article 12.

**ARTICLE 13**  
**SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES**

Section 13.01 *Agreement Of Subordination*. The Issuer covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Securities issued hereunder by his acceptance thereof likewise covenants and agrees, that all Securities shall be issued subject to the provisions of this ARTICLE 13; and each Holder, whether upon original issue or upon transfer or assignment thereof, accepts and agrees to be bound by such provisions.

The payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on all Securities issued hereunder shall, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, be subordinated and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, whether outstanding at the date of this Indenture or thereafter incurred.

The provisions of this ARTICLE 13 define the subordination of the Securities, as obligations of the Issuer, with respect to Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, as defined for the Issuer.

No provision of this ARTICLE 13 shall prevent the occurrence of any default or Event of Default hereunder.

Section 13.02 *Payments to Holders*. In the event and during the continuation of any default in the payment of principal, premium, interest or any other payment due on any Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer continuing beyond the period of grace, if any, specified in the instrument or lease evidencing such Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, then, unless and until such default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist, no payment shall be made by the Issuer with respect to the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities, except payments made pursuant to Article 9 hereof from amounts deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such default.

Upon any payment by the Issuer, or distribution of assets of the Issuer of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to creditors upon any dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of the Issuer, whether voluntary or involuntary or in bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or other proceedings, all amounts due or to become due upon all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer shall first be paid in full, or payment thereof provided for in money in accordance with its terms, before any payment is made on account of principal (including, if applicable, any cash due upon conversion the Securities), premium, if any, or interest on the Securities (except payments made pursuant to ARTICLE 9 hereof from amounts deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization); and upon any such dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization any payment by the Issuer, or distribution of assets of the Issuer of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled, except for the provisions of this ARTICLE 13, shall (except as aforesaid) be paid by the Issuer or by any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, or by the holders of the Securities or by the Trustee under this Indenture if received by them or it, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer (pro rata to such holders on the basis of the respective amounts of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer held by such holders, as calculated by the Issuer) or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer in full, in money or money's worth, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, before any payment or distribution is made to the holders of the Securities or to the Trustee.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment or distribution of assets of the Issuer of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, prohibited by the foregoing, shall be received by the Trustee or the holders of the Securities before all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer is paid in full, or provision is made for such payment in money in accordance with its terms, such payment or distribution shall be held in trust for the benefit of and shall be paid over or delivered to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, as calculated by the Issuer, for application to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer in full in money in accordance with its terms, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

For purposes of this ARTICLE 13, the words, "cash, property or securities" shall not be deemed to include shares of stock of the Issuer as reorganized or readjusted, or securities of the Issuer or any other corporation provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment, the payment of which is subordinated at least to the extent provided in this ARTICLE 13 with respect to the Securities to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer which may at the time be outstanding; provided that (i) the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer is assumed by the new corporation, if any, resulting from any such reorganization or readjustment, and (ii) the rights of the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer (other than leases) and of leases which are assumed are not, without the consent of such holders, altered by such reorganization or readjustment. The consolidation of the Issuer with, or the merger of the Issuer into, another corporation or the liquidation or dissolution of the Issuer following the conveyance or transfer of its property as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to another corporation upon the terms and conditions provided for in ARTICLE 8 hereof shall not be deemed a dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization for the purposes of this Section 13.02 if such other corporation shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions stated in ARTICLE 8 hereof. Nothing in this Section 13.02 shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 5.06.

Section 13.03 *Subrogation Of Securities*. Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, the rights of the holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Issuer applicable to the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer until principal (including, if applicable, any cash due upon conversion the Securities), premium, if any, and interest on the Securities on the Securities shall be paid in full; and, for the purposes of such subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer of any cash, property or securities to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this ARTICLE 13 to or for the benefit of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer by holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as between the Issuer, its creditors other than holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, and the holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment by the Issuer to or on account of the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer. It is understood that the provisions of this ARTICLE 13 are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the holders of the Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, on the other hand.

Nothing contained in this ARTICLE 13 or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall impair, as between the Issuer, its creditors other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, and the holders of the Securities, the obligation of the Issuer, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay to the holders of the Securities the principal (including, if applicable, any cash due upon conversion the Securities), premium, if any, and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or is intended to or shall affect the relative rights of the holders of the Securities and creditors of the Issuer other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or therein prevent the Trustee or the holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this ARTICLE 13 of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer in respect of cash, property or securities of the Issuer received upon the exercise of any such remedy.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Issuer referred to in this ARTICLE 13, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 5.01, and the holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree made by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization proceedings are pending, or a certificate of the receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the holders of the Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of the Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Issuer, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this ARTICLE 13.

Section 13.04 *Authorization By Holders*. Each holder of a Security by his or her acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on his or her behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this ARTICLE 13 appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.



Section 13.05 *Notice to Trustee*. The Issuer shall give promptly written notice to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of any fact known to the Issuer which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this ARTICLE 13. Notwithstanding the provisions of this ARTICLE 13 or any other provision of this Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment of amounts to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this ARTICLE 13, unless and until a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee from the Issuer or a holder or holders of Senior Indebtedness or from any trustee therefor; and before the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 5.01, shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; *provided* that if on a date not fewer than three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such amounts may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of principal (including, if applicable, any cash due upon conversion of the Securities), premium, if any, and interest on any Security) the Trustee shall not have received, with respect to such monies, the notice provided for in this Section 13.05, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such amounts and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it on or after such prior date. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary hereinbefore set forth, nothing shall prevent any payment or delivery by the Issuer or the Trustee to the Holders of amounts in connection with a redemption of Securities if (i) notice of such redemption has been given pursuant to ARTICLE 11 or Section 9.01 hereof prior to the receipt by the Trustee of written notice as aforesaid, and (ii) such notice of redemption is given not earlier than 60 days before the redemption date.

The Trustee conclusively shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer (or a trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer or a trustee on behalf of any such holder or holders. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this ARTICLE 13, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this ARTICLE 13, and if such evidence is not furnished the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

Section 13.06 *Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness*. The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this ARTICLE 13 in respect of any Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer at any time held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer and nothing elsewhere in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants and obligations as are specifically set forth in this ARTICLE 13, and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer and the Trustee shall not be liable to any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer if it shall pay over or deliver to holders of Securities, the Issuer or any other Person money or assets to which any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer shall be entitled by virtue of this ARTICLE 13 or otherwise.

Section 13.07 *No Impairment Of Subordination*. No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Indebtedness to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Issuer or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Issuer with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof which any such holder may have or otherwise be charged with.

Section 13.08 *Rights Of Trustee*. Nothing in this ARTICLE 13 shall apply to claims of or payments to, the Trustee pursuant to Section 5.06.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, as of the first date written above.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., as Issuer

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

•, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

**FORM OF NOTE**

UNLESS AND UNTIL IT IS EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR SECURITIES IN DEFINITIVE REGISTERED FORM, THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE TRANSFERRED EXCEPT AS A WHOLE BY THE DEPOSITARY TO A NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR BY A NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY TO THE DEPOSITARY OR ANOTHER NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR BY THE DEPOSITARY OR ANY SUCH NOMINEE TO A SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE OF SUCH SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY. UNLESS THIS SECURITY IS PRESENTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF THE DEPOSITARY TRUST COMPANY, A NEW YORK CORPORATION (“**DTC**”), TO THE COMPANY OR ITS AGENT FOR REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER, EXCHANGE OR PAYMENT, AND ANY SECURITY ISSUED IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF CEDE & CO. OR IN SUCH OTHER NAME AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC (AND ANY PAYMENT IS MADE TO CEDE & CO. OR TO SUCH OTHER ENTITY AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL INASMUCH AS THE REGISTERED OWNER HEREOF, CEDE & CO., HAS AN INTEREST HEREIN.

**MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.**  
**• % Subordinated Note Due •**

No. • CUSIP No.: •  
\$ •

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (“**Issuer**”, which term includes any successor corporation), for value received promises to pay to CEDE & CO. or its registered assigns, the principal sum of • on •.

Interest Payment Dates: • and • (each, an “**Interest Payment Date**”), commencing on •. Interest Record Dates: • and • (each, an “**Interest Record Date**”).

Reference is made to the further provisions of this Security contained herein, which will for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Security to be signed manually or by facsimile by its duly authorized officer.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

This is one of the series designated herein and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

•, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory

**(REVERSE OF SECURITY)**  
MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC.  
●% Subordinated Note Due ●

1. Interest.

MOTUS GI HOLDINGS, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “**Issuer**”), promises to pay interest on the Principal amount of this Security at the rate per annum shown above. Cash interest on the Securities will accrue from the most recent date to which interest has been paid or, if no interest has been paid, from ●. The Issuer will pay interest semi-annually in arrears on each Interest Payment Date, commencing ●. Interest will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

The Issuer shall pay interest on overdue Principal from time to time on demand at the rate borne by the Securities and on overdue installments of interest (without regard to any applicable grace periods) to the extent lawful.

2. Method of Payment

The Issuer shall pay interest on the Securities (except defaulted interest) to the persons who are the registered Holders at the close of business on the Interest Record Date immediately preceding the Interest Payment Date notwithstanding any transfer or exchange of such Security subsequent to such Interest Record Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date. Holders must surrender Securities to the Trustee to collect Principal payments. The Issuer shall pay Principal and interest in money of the United States that at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts (“**U.S. Legal Tender**”). However, the payments of interest, and any portion of the Principal (other than interest payable at maturity or on any redemption or repayment date or the final payment of Principal) shall be made by the Paying Agent, upon receipt from the Issuer of immediately available funds by 11:00 a.m., New York City time (or such other time as may be agreed to between the Issuer and the Paying Agent or the Issuer), directly to a Holder (by Federal funds wire transfer or otherwise) if the Holder has delivered written instructions to the Trustee 15 days prior to such payment date requesting that such payment will be so made and designating the bank account to which such payments shall be so made and in the case of payments of Principal surrenders the same to the Trustee in exchange for a Security or Securities aggregating the same principal amount as the unredeemed Principal amount of the Securities surrendered.

3. Paying Agent.

Initially, ● (the “**Trustee**”) will act as Paying Agent. The Issuer may change any Paying Agent without notice to the Holders.

4. Indenture.

The Issuer issued the Securities under an Indenture, dated as of ● (the “**Indenture**”), between the Issuer and the Trustee. Capitalized terms herein are used as defined in the Indenture unless otherwise defined herein. The terms of the Securities include those stated in the Indenture and those made part of the Indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. Sections 77aaa-77bbb) (the “**TIA**”), as in effect on the date of the Indenture until such time as the Indenture is qualified under the TIA, and thereafter as in effect on the date on which the Indenture is qualified under the TIA. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Securities are subject to all such terms, and Holders of Securities are referred to the Indenture and the TIA for a statement of them. To the extent the terms of the Indenture and this Security are inconsistent, the terms of the Indenture shall govern.

5. Subordination.

The indebtedness of the Issuer evidenced by this Security, including the Principal hereof and interest hereon, is, to the extent and in the manner set forth in the Indenture, subordinate and junior in right of payment to the Company's obligations to holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer and each Holder of this Security, by acceptance hereof, agrees to and shall be bound by such provisions of the Indenture and all other provisions of the Indenture.

6. Denominations; Transfer; Exchange.

The Securities are in registered form, without coupons, in denominations of \$1,000 and multiples of \$1,000. A Holder shall register the transfer of or exchange Securities in accordance with the Indenture. The Issuer may require a Holder, among other things, to furnish appropriate endorsements and transfer documents and to pay certain transfer taxes or similar governmental charges payable in connection therewith as permitted by the Indenture. The Issuer need not issue, authenticate, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities or portions thereof for a period of fifteen (15) days before such series is selected for redemption, nor need the Issuer register the transfer or exchange of any security selected for redemption in whole or in part.

7. Persons Deemed Owners

The registered Holder of a Security shall be treated as the owner of it for all purposes.

8. Unclaimed Funds.

If funds for the payment of Principal or interest remain unclaimed for two years, the Trustee and the Paying Agent will repay the funds to the Issuer at its written request. After that, all liability of the Trustee and such Paying Agent with respect to such funds shall cease.

9. Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.

The Issuer may be discharged from its obligations under the Securities and under the Indenture with respect to the Securities except for certain provisions thereof, and may be discharged from obligations to comply with certain covenants contained in the Securities and in the Indenture with respect to the Securities, in each case upon satisfaction of certain conditions specified in the Indenture.

10. Amendment; Supplement; Waiver.

Subject to certain exceptions, the Securities and the provisions of the Indenture relating to the Securities may be amended or supplemented with the written consent of the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding, and any existing Default or Event of Default or compliance with certain provisions may be waived with the consent of the Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding. Without notice to or consent of any Holder, the parties thereto may amend or supplement the Indenture and the Securities to, among other things, cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency, provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities or comply with any requirements of the Commission in connection with the qualification of the Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act, or make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Holder of a Security.

11. Defaults and Remedies.

If an Event of Default (other than certain bankruptcy Events of Default with respect to the Issuer) occurs and is continuing, the Trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate Principal amount of Securities then outstanding may declare all of the Securities to be due and payable immediately in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. If a bankruptcy Event of Default with respect to the Issuer occurs and is continuing, all the Securities shall be immediately due and payable immediately in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture without any notice or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder. Holders of Securities may not enforce the Indenture or the Securities except as provided in the Indenture. The Trustee is not obligated to enforce the Indenture or the Securities unless it has received indemnity satisfactory to it. The Indenture permits, subject to certain limitations therein provided, Holders of a majority in aggregate Principal amount of the Securities then outstanding to direct the Trustee in its exercise of any trust or power. The Trustee may withhold from Holders of Securities notice of certain continuing Defaults or Events of Default if it determines that withholding notice is in their interest.

12. Conversion.

Reference is made to the Indenture, including, without limitation, provisions giving the Holder of this Security the right to convert this Security into Capital Stock of the Issuer on the terms and subject to the limitations as more fully specified in the Indenture. The initial conversion rate for this Security is ●. This conversion rate is subject to modification as provided in the Indenture. Such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

13. Trustee Dealings with Issuer.

The Trustee under the Indenture, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Issuer as if it were not the Trustee.

14. No Recourse Against Others.

No stockholder, director, officer, employee or incorporator, as such, of the Issuer or any successor Person thereof shall have any liability for any obligation under the Securities or the Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. Each Holder of a Security by accepting a Security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for the issuance of the Securities.

15. Authentication.

This Security shall not be valid until the Trustee manually signs the certificate of authentication on this Security.



16. Abbreviations and Defined Terms.

Customary abbreviations may be used in the name of a Holder of a Security or an assignee, such as: TEN COM (= tenants in common), TEN ENT (= tenants by the entireties), JT TEN (= joint tenants with right of survivorship and not as tenants in common), CUST (= Custodian), and U/G/M/A (= Uniform Gifts to Minors Act).

17. CUSIP Numbers.

Pursuant to a recommendation promulgated by the Committee on Uniform Security Identification Procedures, the Issuer has caused CUSIP numbers to be printed on the Securities as a convenience to the Holders of the Securities. No representation is made as to the accuracy of such numbers as printed on the Securities and reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed hereon.

18. Governing Law.

The laws of the State of New York shall govern the Indenture and this Security thereof.

**ASSIGNMENT FORM**

I or we assign and transfer this Security to

\_\_\_\_\_

(Print or type name, address and zip code of assignee or transferee)

\_\_\_\_\_

(Insert Social Security or other identifying number of assignee or transferee)

and irrevocably appoint \_\_\_\_\_ agent to transfer this Security on the books of the Issuer. The agent may substitute another to act for him.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_ Signed: (Signed exactly as name appears on the other side of this Security)

Signature Guarantee: \_\_\_\_\_

Participant in a recognized Signature Guarantee Medallion Program (or other signature guarantor program reasonably acceptable to the Trustee)

March 16, 2021

Motus GI Holdings, Inc.  
1301 East Broward Boulevard, 3rd Floor  
Ft. Lauderdale, FL, 33301

**Re: Shelf Registration Statement on Form S-3**

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This opinion is being furnished to you in connection with the Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement"), including the base prospectus that is part of the Registration Statement (the "Prospectus") and the equity distribution agreement prospectus that is part of the Registration Statement (the "ATM Prospectus"), filed by Motus GI Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") on March 16, 2021 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

The Prospectus provides that it will be supplemented in the future by one or more prospectus supplements (each, a "Prospectus Supplement"). The Prospectus, as supplemented by the various Prospectus Supplements, will provide for the issuance and sale by the Company from time to time of up to \$100,000,000 aggregate offering price of (i) shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Common Stock"), (ii) shares of the Company's preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Preferred Stock"), in one or more series or classes, (iii) warrants to purchase securities, property or assets of the Company (the "Warrants"), (iv) the Company's senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities (collectively, the "Debt Securities"), which may be issued pursuant to a senior debt indenture (the "Senior Debt Indenture") between the Company and the trustee to be named therein (the "Senior Debt Trustee") and a subordinated debt indenture (the "Subordinated Debt Indenture," and together with the Senior Debt Indenture, the "Indentures") between the Company and the trustee to be named therein (the "Subordinated Debt Trustee" and, together with the Senior Debt Trustee, the "Trustees"), (v) subscription rights to purchase Common Stock or Debt Securities (the "Subscription Rights") or (vi) units composed of any of the foregoing (the "Units"). The Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Warrants, Debt Securities, Subscription Rights and Units are collectively referred to herein as the "Securities." The Warrants may be issued pursuant to a warrant agreement (the "Warrant Agreement") between the Company and a bank or trust company as warrant agent. Any Preferred Stock may be exchangeable for and/or convertible into shares of Common Stock or another series of Preferred Stock. Any Debt Securities may be exchangeable and/or convertible into shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock. The Units may be issued pursuant to a Unit Agreement (the "Unit Agreement") between the Company and a bank or trust company as unit agent. The Securities are being registered for offering and sale from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act.

The ATM Prospectus relates to the sale by the Company of shares of common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$25,000,000 (the "ATM Shares") under an equity distribution agreement, dated as of March 16, 2021, (the "Equity Distribution Agreement") between the Company and Oppenheimer & Co. Inc.

In rendering our opinions set forth below, we have reviewed the Registration Statement and the exhibits thereto. We have also reviewed such corporate documents and records of the Company, such certificates of public officials and officers of the Company and such other matters as we have deemed necessary or appropriate for purposes of this opinion. In our examination, we have assumed: (i) the authenticity of original documents and the genuineness of all signatures; (ii) the conformity to the originals of all documents submitted to us as copies; (iii) the truth, accuracy and completeness of the information, representations and warranties contained in the instruments, documents, certificates and records we have reviewed; and (iv) the legal capacity for all purposes relevant hereto of all natural persons and, with respect to all parties to agreements or instruments relevant hereto other than the Company, that such parties had the requisite power and authority (corporate or otherwise) to execute, deliver and perform such agreements or instruments, that such agreements or instruments have been duly authorized by all requisite action (corporate or otherwise), executed and delivered by such parties and that such agreements or instruments are the valid, binding and enforceable obligations of such parties. As to any facts material to the opinions expressed herein that were not independently established or verified, we have relied upon oral or written statements and representations of officers and other representatives of the Company.

---

Based on the foregoing, and subject to the assumptions, limitations and qualifications set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to shares of Common Stock (other than the ATM Shares), when (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the shares of Common Stock have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company in conformity with the Company's certificate of incorporation and bylaws; (b) such shares have been issued and delivered against payment of the purchase price therefor in an amount in excess of the par value thereof, in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement; and (c) to the extent such shares of Common Stock are to be issued upon the conversion, exchange or exercise of any Preferred Stock, Warrants or Debt Securities, when such shares have been duly issued and delivered as contemplated by the terms of the applicable Preferred Stock, the Warrant Agreement relating to such Warrants or the Indenture relating to such Debt Securities, respectively, the shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

2. With respect to the ATM Shares, (a) when the Registration Statement has become effective under the Securities Act, and (b) when the ATM Shares have been issued and sold in accordance with the Equity Distribution Agreement, and as described in the Registration Statement and ATM Prospectus, the ATM Shares will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

3. With respect to any particular series of shares of Preferred Stock, when (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the shares of Preferred Stock have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company in conformity with the Company's certificate of incorporation and bylaws; (b) an appropriate certificate of designation relating to a series of the Preferred Stock to be sold under the Registration Statement has been duly authorized and adopted and filed with the Secretary of State of Delaware; (c) the terms of issuance and sale of shares of such series of Preferred Stock have been duly established in conformity with the Company's certificate of incorporation and bylaws so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property; (d) such shares have been issued and delivered against payment of the purchase price therefor in an amount in excess of the par value thereof, in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement; and (e) to the extent such shares of Preferred Stock are to be issued upon the conversion, exchange or exercise of any Preferred Stock, Warrants or Debt Securities, when such shares have been duly issued and delivered as contemplated by the terms of the applicable Preferred Stock, the Warrant Agreement relating to such Warrants or the Indenture relating to such Debt Securities, respectively, the shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

4. With respect to Warrants, when (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the Warrants have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company; (b) the terms of the Warrants and of their issuance and sale have been duly established so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property; (c) the Warrants and the applicable Warrant Agreement relating to the Warrants, if any, have been duly executed and countersigned and the Warrants have been issued and sold in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement; and (d) the Company has received the applicable consideration for the Warrants as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s), the Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company.

5. With respect to Debt Securities, when (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the Debt Securities have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company; (b) the terms of the Debt Securities and of their issuance and sale have been duly established so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property; (c) the Debt Securities and the applicable Indenture relating to the Debt Securities have been duly executed and countersigned and in the case of the Indenture, duly authenticated by the Trustee, and the Debt Securities have been issued and sold as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement; and (d) the Company has received the applicable consideration for the Debt Securities as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s), the Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company.

---

6. With respect to the Subscription Rights, when both: (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the Subscription Rights have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company; (b) the terms of the Subscription Rights and of their issuance and sale have been duly established so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property; and (c) the agreement(s) relating to the Subscription Rights have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company, then the Subscription Rights will be valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

7. With respect to Units, when (a) the issuance and the terms of the sale of the Units have been duly authorized by the Board of Directors of the Company; (b) the terms of the Units and of their issuance and sale have been duly established so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property; (c) the Unit Agreement and the Units have been duly executed and countersigned and the Units have been issued and sold in accordance with the applicable Unit Agreement, as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement; and (d) the Company has received the applicable consideration for the Units as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the related Prospectus Supplement(s), the Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company.

In rendering the opinions set forth above, we have assumed that (i) the Registration Statement (and any applicable post-effective amendment thereto) will have become effective under the Securities Act, a Prospectus Supplement will have been prepared and filed with the Commission describing the Securities offered thereby and such Securities will have been issued and sold in accordance with the terms of such Prospectus Supplement and in compliance with all applicable laws; and (ii) a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to such Securities (if applicable) will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto; (iii) the Securities will be duly authorized by all necessary corporate action by the Company and any agreement pursuant to which such Securities may be issued will be duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto; (iv) the Company is and will remain duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under applicable state law; and (v) the Company has reserved a sufficient number of shares of its duly authorized, but unissued, Common Stock and Preferred Stock as is necessary to provide for the issuance of the shares of Common Stock and Preferred Stock pursuant to the Registration Statement.

The opinions set forth above are subject to the following exceptions, limitations and qualifications: (i) the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium or other similar laws now or hereafter in effect relating to or affecting the rights and remedies of creditors; (ii) the effect of general principles of equity, including without limitation, concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing and the possible unavailability of specific performance or injunctive relief, regardless of whether enforcement is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law, and the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought; and (iii) the unenforceability under certain circumstances under law or court decisions of provisions providing for the indemnification of, or contribution to, a party with respect to liability where such indemnification or contribution is contrary to public policy. We express no opinion concerning the enforceability of any waiver of rights or defenses with respect to stay, extension or usury laws. Our opinion expressed herein is also subject to the qualification that no term or provision shall be included in any certificate of designation relating to any series of the Preferred Stock, Warrant Agreement, Indenture, Unit Agreement or any other agreement or instrument pursuant to which any of the Securities are to be issued that would affect the validity of such opinion.

Our opinion is limited to the federal laws of the United States, the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (including reported judicial decisions interpreting the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware) and the State of New York. We express no opinion as to the effect of the law of any other jurisdiction. Our opinion is rendered as of the date hereof, and we assume no obligation to advise you of changes in law or fact (or the effect thereof on the opinions expressed herein) that hereafter may come to our attention.

We hereby consent to the inclusion of this opinion as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement and to the references to our firm therein and in the Prospectus and in any Prospectus Supplement under the caption "Legal Matters." In giving our consent, we do not admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder.

Very truly yours,

*/s/ Lowenstein Sandler LLP*

LOWENSTEIN SANDLER LLP

---

**CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement of Motus GI Holdings, Inc. on Form S-3 to be filed on or about March 16, 2021 of our report dated March 16, 2021, on our audits of the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 2020 and 2019 and for each of the years then ended, which report was included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 16, 2021. Our report includes an explanatory paragraph about the existence of substantial doubt concerning the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. We also consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Experts" in this Registration Statement.

/s/ EisnerAmper LLP

EISNERAMPER LLP  
Philadelphia, PA  
March 16, 2021